

ISO 20022

Payments Mandates May 2013

Approved by the Payments SEG on 28 January 2013

Message Definition Report - Part 2

This document provides details of the Message Definitions for Payments Mandates May 2013.

31 May 2013

Table of Contents

1	Message Set Overview	3
1.1	List of MessageDefinitions	3
2	pain.009.001.03 MandateInitiationRequestV03	5
2.1	MessageDefinition Functionality	5
2.2	Structure	6
2.3	Constraints	7
2.4	Message Building Blocks	8
3	pain.010.001.03 MandateAmendmentRequestV03	35
3.1	MessageDefinition Functionality	35
3.2	Structure	36
3.3	Constraints	39
3.4	Message Building Blocks	40
4	pain.011.001.03 MandateCancellationRequestV03	95
4.1	MessageDefinition Functionality	95
4.2	Structure	96
4.3	Constraints	97
4.4	Message Building Blocks	98
5	pain.012.001.03 MandateAcceptanceReportV03	132
5.1	MessageDefinition Functionality	132
5.2	Structure	133
5.3	Constraints	134
5.4	Message Building Blocks	135
6	Message Items Types	168
6.1	MessageComponents	168
6.2	Message Datatypes	190

1 Message Set Overview

Introduction

This document describes a set of Mandate message definitions, defined in the Payments Initiation area, and approved by the ISO 20022 Payments Standards Evaluation Group as ISO 20022 messages on 28 January 2013, as a result of the Maintenance 2012/2013. The messages were originally developed and approved in August 2009 and were revised in April 2012 as part of the Maintenance 2011/2012. The messages can be exchanged between creditor and creditor agent or debtor and debtor agent AND between creditor agent and debtor agent as there is no clearing and settlement involved in the process flow.

1.1 List of Message Definitions

The following table lists all Message Definitions described in this book.

Message Definition	Definition
pain.009.001.03 MandateInitiationRequestV03	<p>The MandateInitiationRequest message is sent by the initiator of the request to his agent. The initiator can either be the debtor or the creditor.</p> <p>The MandateInitiationRequest message is forwarded by the agent of the initiator to the agent of the counterparty.</p> <p>The MandateInitiationRequest message is used to set-up the instruction that allows the debtor agent to accept instructions from the creditor, through the creditor agent, to debit the account of the debtor.</p>
pain.010.001.03 MandateAmendmentRequestV03	<p>The MandateAmendmentRequest message is sent by the initiator of the request to his agent and/or counterparty. The initiator can both be the debtor or the creditor (or where appropriate the debtor agent).</p> <p>The MandateAmendmentRequest message is forwarded by the agent of the initiator to the agent of the counterparty.</p> <p>A MandateAmendmentRequest message is used to request the amendment of specific information in an existing mandate. The MandateAmendmentRequest message must reflect the new data of the element(s) to be amended and at a minimum a unique reference to the existing mandate. If accepted, this MandateAmendmentRequest message together with the MandateAcceptanceReport message confirming the acceptance will be considered as a valid amendment on an existing mandate, agreed upon by all parties. The amended mandate will from then on be considered the valid mandate.</p>
pain.011.001.03 MandateCancellationRequestV03	<p>The MandateCancellationRequest message is sent by the initiator of the request to his agent. The initiator can either be the debtor or the creditor.</p> <p>The MandateCancellationRequest message is forwarded by the agent of the initiator to the agent of the counterparty.</p> <p>A MandateCancellationRequest message is used to request the cancellation of an existing mandate. If accep-</p>

MessageDefinition	Definition
	ted, this MandateCancellationRequest message together with the MandateAcceptanceReport message confirming the acceptance will be considered a valid cancellation of an existing mandate, agreed upon by all parties.
pain.012.001.03 MandateAcceptanceReportV03	<p>The MandateAcceptanceReport message is sent from the agent of the receiver (debtor or creditor) of the MandateRequest message (initiation, amendment or cancellation) to the agent of the initiator of the MandateRequest message (debtor or creditor).</p> <p>A MandateAcceptanceReport message is used to confirm the acceptance or rejection of a MandateRequest message. Where acceptance is part of the full process flow, a MandateRequest message only becomes valid after a confirmation of acceptance is received through a MandateAcceptanceReport message from the agent of the receiver.</p>

2 **pain.009.001.03 MandateInitiationRequestV03**

2.1 **MessageDefinition Functionality**

Scope

The MandateInitiationRequest message is sent by the initiator of the request to his agent. The initiator can either be the debtor or the creditor.

The MandateInitiationRequest message is forwarded by the agent of the initiator to the agent of the counterparty.

The MandateInitiationRequest message is used to set-up the instruction that allows the debtor agent to accept instructions from the creditor, through the creditor agent, to debit the account of the debtor.

Usage

The MandateInitiationRequest message can contain one or more request(s) to set-up a specific mandate.

The messages can be exchanged between creditor and creditor agent or debtor and debtor agent and between creditor agent and debtor agent.

The message can also be used by an initiating party that has authority to send the message on behalf of the creditor or debtor.

The MandateInitiationRequest message can be used in domestic and cross-border scenarios.

Outline

The MandateInitiationRequestV03 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. GroupHeader

Set of characteristics to identify the message and parties playing a role in the mandate initiation, but which are not part of the mandate.

B. Mandate

Set of elements used to provide the details of the mandate signed between the (ultimate) creditor and the (ultimate) debtor.

C. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

2.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <MndtInitnReq>	[1..1]		C8	
	GroupHeader <GrpHdr>	[1..1]			8
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		9
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		9
	Authorisation <Authstn>	[0..2]			9
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		9
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		10
	InitiatingParty <InitgPty>	[0..1]	±		10
	InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		12
	InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		13
	Mandate <Mndt>	[1..*]		C10, C11	13
	MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		15
	MandateRequestIdentification <MndtReqId>	[1..1]	Text		15
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			15
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			15
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		16
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		16
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			16
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		16
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		16
	Occurrences <Ocrncs>	[0..1]			16
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		17
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		17
	Duration <Drtn>	[0..1]	±		18
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		18
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		18
	CollectionAmount <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C6	18
	MaximumAmount <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C6	18
	CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		19

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		21
	CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		23
	CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		23
	UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		24
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		26
	DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		28
	DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		28
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		29
	ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>	[0..1]			31
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			31
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			31
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		32
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		33
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		33
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		33
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		33
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C9	33
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C9	33

2.3 Constraints

C1 ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged. (Algorithm)

C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged. (Algorithm)

C3 AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the BIC directory, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters comprising the first three or all four of the following components: INSTITUTION CODE, COUNTRY CODE, LOCATION CODE,

BRANCH CODE. The institution code, country code and location code are mandatory, while the branch code is optional. (Algorithm)

C4 BICFI

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the BIC directory, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters comprising the first three or all four of the following components: INSTITUTION CODE, COUNTRY CODE, LOCATION CODE, BRANCH CODE. The institution code, country code and location code are mandatory, while the branch code is optional. (Algorithm)

C5 Country

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code). (Algorithm)

C6 CurrencyAmount

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot. (Algorithm)

C7 IBAN

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN. (Algorithm)

C8 SupplementaryDataRule

The SupplementaryData building block at message level must not be used to provide additional information about a transaction. The SupplementaryData element at transaction level should be used for that purpose.

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C9 SupplementaryDataRule

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

C10 UltimateCreditorGuideline

UltimateCreditor may only be present if different from Creditor.

C11 UltimateDebtorGuideline

UltimateDebtor may only be present if different from Debtor.

2.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

2.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Set of characteristics to identify the message and parties playing a role in the mandate initiation, but which are not part of the mandate.

GroupHeader <GrpHdr> contains the following **GroupHeader47** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		9
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		9
	Authorisation <Authstn>	[0..2]			9
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		9
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		10
	InitiatingParty <InitgPty>	[0..1]	±		10
	InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		12
	InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		13

2.4.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Point to point reference, as assigned by the instructing party, and sent to the instructed party, to unambiguously identify the message.

Usage: The instructing party has to make sure that MessageIdentification is unique per instructed party for a pre-agreed period.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

2.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Date and time at which the message was created.

Datatype: "ISODateTime" on page 198

2.4.1.3 Authorisation <Authstn>

Presence: [0..2]

Definition: User identification or any user key to be used to check the authority of the initiating party.

Usage: The content is not of a technical nature, but reflects the organisational structure at the initiating side. The authorisation element can typically be used in relay scenarios, payment initiations, payment returns or payment reversals that are initiated on behalf of a party different from the initiating party.

Authorisation <Authstn> contains one of the following **Authorisation1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		9
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		10

2.4.1.3.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the authorisation, in a coded form.

Datatype: "Authorisation1Code" on page 192

CodeName	Name	Definition
AUTH	PreAuthorisedFile	Indicates a file has been pre authorised or approved within the originating customer environment and no further approval is required.
FDET	FileLevelAuthorisationDetails	Indicates that a file requires additional file level approval, with the ability to view both the payment information block and supporting customer credit transaction detail.
FSUM	FileLevelAuthorisationSummary	Indicates that a file requires additional file level approval, with the ability to view only the payment information block level information.
ILEV	InstructionLevelAuthorisation	Indicates that a file requires all customer transactions to be authorised or approved.

2.4.1.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the authorisation, in a free text form.

Datatype: "Max128Text" on page 200

2.4.1.4 InitiatingParty <InitgPty>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party that initiates the mandate message.

InitiatingParty <InitgPty> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification43" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		181
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		181
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			181
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]			187
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

2.4.1.5 InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent that instructs the next party in the chain to carry out an instruction.

Usage Rule:

In case of amendment and cancellation request messages, the instructing agent is the party sending the amendment and cancellation request message and not the party that sent the original mandate initiation request message.

In case of acceptance report message, the instructing agent is the party sending the acceptance report message and not the party that sent the original mandate request message.

InstructingAgent <InstgAgt> contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5](#)" on page 172 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			172
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		173
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]			173
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]			174
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		174
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		174
	MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		174
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]			175
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		175
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			175
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		176
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		176
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		176
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		176

2.4.1.6 InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent that is instructed by the previous party in the chain to carry out an instruction.

Usage Rule:

In case of amendment and cancellation request messages, the instructed agent is the party receiving the amendment and cancellation request message and not the party that received the original mandate initiation request message.

In case of acceptance report message, the instructed agent is the party receiving the acceptance report message and not the party that received the original mandate request message.

InstructedAgent <InstdAgt> contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5](#)" on page 172 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			172
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		173
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]			173
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]			174
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		174
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		174
	MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		174
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]			175
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		175
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			175
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		176
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		176
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		176
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		176

2.4.2 Mandate <Mndt>

Presence: [1..*]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide the details of the mandate signed between the (ultimate) creditor and the (ultimate) debtor.

Impacted by: [C10 "UltimateCreditorGuideline"](#), [C11 "UltimateDebtorGuideline"](#)

Mandate <Mndt> contains the following **Mandate4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		15
	MandateRequestIdentification <MndtReqId>	[1..1]	Text		15
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			15
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			15
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		16
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		16
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			16
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		16
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		16
	Occurrences <Ocrncs>	[0..1]			16
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		17
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		17
	Duration <Drtn>	[0..1]	±		18
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		18
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		18
	CollectionAmount <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C6	18
	MaximumAmount <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C6	18
	CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		19
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		21
	CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		23
	CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		23
	UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		24
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		26
	DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		28
	DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		28
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		29
	ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>	[0..1]			31
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			31
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			31
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		32
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		33

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		33
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		33
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		33
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C9	33

Constraints

- **UltimateCreditorGuideline**

UltimateCreditor may only be present if different from Creditor.

- **UltimateDebtorGuideline**

UltimateDebtor may only be present if different from Debtor.

2.4.2.1 MandateIdentification <MndtId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously identify the mandate.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

2.4.2.2 MandateRequestIdentification <MndtReqId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification for the mandate request, as assigned by the initiating party.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

2.4.2.3 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of mandate, such as paper, electronic or scheme.

Type <Tp> contains the following **MandateTypeInformation1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			15
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		16
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		16
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			16
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		16
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		16

2.4.2.3.1 ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agreement under which or rules under which the mandate resides.

ServiceLevel <SvcLvl> contains one of the following **ServiceLevel8Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		16
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		16

2.4.2.3.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the parties, as published in an external service level code list.

Datatype: "ExternalServiceLevel1Code" on page 196

2.4.2.3.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the parties, as a proprietary code.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

2.4.2.3.2 LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: User community specific instrument.

Usage: This element is used to specify a local instrument, local clearing option and/or further qualify the service or service level.

LocalInstrument <LclInstrm> contains one of the following **LocalInstrument2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		16
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		16

2.4.2.3.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the local instrument, as published in an external local instrument code list.

Datatype: "ExternalLocalInstrument1Code" on page 195

2.4.2.3.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the local instrument, as a proprietary code.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

2.4.2.4 Occurrences <Ocrncs>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides details of the duration of the mandate and occurrence of the underlying transactions.

Occurrences <Ocrnccs> contains the following **MandateOccurrences2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		17
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		17
	Duration <Drtn>	[0..1]	±		18
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		18
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		18

2.4.2.4.1 SequenceType <SeqTp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identifies the underlying transaction sequence as either recurring or one-off.

Datatype: "SequenceType2Code" on page 197

CodeName	Name	Definition
RCUR	Recurring	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used for regular direct debit transactions initiated by the creditor.
OOFF	OneOff	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used to initiate one single direct debit transaction.

2.4.2.4.2 Frequency <Frqcy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Regularity with which instructions are to be created and processed.

Datatype: "Frequency6Code" on page 196

CodeName	Name	Definition
YEAR	Annual	Event takes place every year or once a year.
MNTH	Monthly	Event takes place every month or once a month.
QURT	Quarterly	Event takes place every three months or four times a year.
MIAN	SemiAnnual	Event takes place every six months or two times a year.
WEEK	Weekly	Event takes place once a week.
DAIL	Daily	Event takes place every day.
ADHO	Adhoc	Event takes place on request or as necessary.
INDA	IntraDay	Event takes place several times a day.

CodeName	Name	Definition
FRTN	Fortnightly	Event takes place every two weeks.

2.4.2.4.3 Duration <Drtn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Length of time for which the mandate remains valid.

Duration <Drtn> contains the following elements (see ["DatePeriodDetails1"](#) on page 171 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		171
	ToDate <ToDt>	[0..1]	Date		171

2.4.2.4.4 FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date of the first collection of a direct debit as per the mandate.

Datatype: ["ISODate"](#) on page 197

2.4.2.4.5 FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date of the final collection of a direct debit as per the mandate.

Datatype: ["ISODate"](#) on page 197

2.4.2.5 CollectionAmount <ColltnAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Fixed amount to be collected from the debtor's account.

Impacted by: [C1 "ActiveCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

Datatype: ["ActiveCurrencyAndAmount"](#) on page 190

Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

2.4.2.6 MaximumAmount <MaxAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Maximum amount that may be collected from the debtor's account, per instruction.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 190

Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

2.4.2.7 CreditorSchemeldentification <CdtrSchmeld>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Credit party that signs the mandate.

CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmId> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification43" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		181
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		181
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			181
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]			187
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

2.4.2.8 Creditor <Cdtr>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Party that signs the mandate and to whom an amount of money is due.

Creditor <Cdtr> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification43" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		181
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		181
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			181
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]			187
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

2.4.2.9 CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the creditor to which a credit entry will be posted as a result of the payment transaction.

CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct> contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount24](#)" on page 168 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		168
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		168
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		169
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		169

2.4.2.10 CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Financial institution servicing an account for the creditor.

CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt> contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5" on page 172 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			172
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		173
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]			173
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]			174
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		174
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		174
	MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		174
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]			175
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		175
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			175
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		176
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		176
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		176
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		176

2.4.2.11 UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Ultimate party to which an amount of money is due.

UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification43" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		181
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		181
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			181
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]			187
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

2.4.2.12 Debtor <Dbtr>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Party that signs the mandate and owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

Debtor <Dbtr> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification43" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		181
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		181
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			181
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]			187
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

2.4.2.13 DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the debtor, to which a debit entry will be made as a result of the transaction.

DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct> contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount24](#)" on page 168 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		168
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		168
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		169
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		169

2.4.2.14 DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Financial institution servicing an account for the debtor.

DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt> contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5" on page 172 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			172
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		173
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]			173
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]			174
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		174
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		174
	MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		174
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]			175
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		175
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			175
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		176
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		176
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		176
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		176

2.4.2.15 UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification43" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		181
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		181
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			181
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]			187
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

2.4.2.16 ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides information to identify the underlying documents associated with the mandate.

ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc> contains the following **ReferredDocumentInformation3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			31
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			31
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		32
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		33
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		33
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		33
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		33

2.4.2.16.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of referred document.

Type <Tp> contains the following **ReferredDocumentType2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			31
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		32
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		33
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		33

2.4.2.16.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Provides the type details of the referred document.

CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry> contains one of the following **ReferredDocumentType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		32
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		33

2.4.2.16.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Document type in a coded form.

Datatype: "DocumentType5Code" on page 193

CodeName	Name	Definition
MSIN	MeteredServiceInvoice	Document is an invoice claiming payment for the supply of metered services, for example gas or electricity supplied to a fixed meter.
CNFA	CreditNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a credit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
DNFA	DebitNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a debit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
CINV	CommercialInvoice	Document is an invoice.
CREN	CreditNote	Document is a credit note.
DEBN	DebitNote	Document is a debit note.
HIRI	HireInvoice	Document is an invoice for the hiring of human resources or renting goods or equipment.
SBIN	SelfBilledInvoice	Document is an invoice issued by the debtor.
CMCN	CommercialContract	Document is an agreement between the parties, stipulating the terms and conditions of the delivery of goods or services.
SOAC	StatementOfAccount	Document is a statement of the transactions posted to the debtor's account at the supplier.
DISP	DispatchAdvice	Document is a dispatch advice.
BOLD	BillOfLading	Document is a shipping notice.
VCHR	Voucher	Document is an electronic payment document.
AROI	AccountReceivableOpenItem	Document is a payment that applies to a specific source document.
TSUT	TradeServicesUtilityTransaction	Document is a transaction identifier as assigned by the Trade Services Utility.

2.4.2.16.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Proprietary identification of the type of the remittance document.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 201**2.4.2.16.1.2 Issuer <Issr>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Identification of the issuer of the reference document type.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 201**2.4.2.16.2 Number <Nb>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the referred document.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 201**2.4.2.16.3 RelatedDate <RltdDt>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Date associated with the referred document.*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 197**2.4.2.17 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>***Presence:* [0..*]*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements within the message component.*Impacted by:* C9 "SupplementaryDataRule"**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 178 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		178
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]			179
	Contents <Cnts>	[1..1]	(User Defined)		179

Constraints

- SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

2.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>*Presence:* [0..*]

Definition: Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

Impacted by: C9 "SupplementaryDataRule"

SupplementaryData <SplmtryData> contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 178 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		178
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]			179
	Contents <Cnts>	[1..1]	(User Defined)		179

Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

3 **pain.010.001.03 MandateAmendmentRequestV03**

3.1 **MessageDefinition Functionality**

Scope

The MandateAmendmentRequest message is sent by the initiator of the request to his agent and/or counterparty. The initiator can both be the debtor or the creditor (or where appropriate the debtor agent).

The MandateAmendmentRequest message is forwarded by the agent of the initiator to the agent of the counterparty.

A MandateAmendmentRequest message is used to request the amendment of specific information in an existing mandate. The MandateAmendmentRequest message must reflect the new data of the element(s) to be amended and at a minimum a unique reference to the existing mandate. If accepted, this MandateAmendmentRequest message together with the MandateAcceptanceReport message confirming the acceptance will be considered as a valid amendment on an existing mandate, agreed upon by all parties. The amended mandate will from then on be considered the valid mandate.

Usage

The MandateAmendmentRequest message can contain one or more request (s) to amend a specific mandate.

The messages can be exchanged between creditor and creditor agent or debtor and debtor agent and between creditor agent and debtor agent.

The message can also be used by an initiating party that has authority to send the message on behalf of the creditor or debtor.

The MandateAmendmentRequest message can be used in domestic and cross-border scenarios.

If all elements in the existing Mandate need to be amended or the underlying contract is different, then the MandateAmendmentRequest message should not be used. The existing Mandate has to be cancelled and a new Mandate has to be initiated.

Outline

The MandateAmendmentRequestV03 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. GroupHeader

Set of characteristics to identify the message and parties playing a role in the amendment of the mandate, but which are not part of the mandate.

B. UnderlyingAmendmentDetails

Set of elements used to provide details on the amendment request.

C. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

3.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <MndtAmdmntReq>	[1..1]		C9	
	GroupHeader <GrpHdr>	[1..1]			40
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		41
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		41
	Authorisation <Authstn>	[0..2]			41
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		41
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		42
	InitiatingParty <InitgPty>	[0..1]	±		42
	InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		44
	InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		45
	UnderlyingAmendmentDetails <UndrlygAmdmntDtls>	[1..*]			45
	OriginalMessageInformation <OrgnlMsgInf>	[0..1]	±		48
	AmendmentReason <AmdmntRsn>	[1..1]			48
	Originator <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		49
	Reason <Rsn>	[1..1]			51
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		51
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		51
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		51
	Mandate <Mndt>	[1..1]		C11, C13	51
	MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[1..1]	Text		53
	MandateRequestIdentification <MndtReqId>	[0..1]	Text		53
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			53
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			53
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		54
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		54
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			54
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		54
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		54
	Occurrences <Ocrncs>	[0..1]			54

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		55
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		55
	Duration <Drtn>	[0..1]	±		56
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		56
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		56
	CollectionAmount <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C6	56
	MaximumAmount <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C6	56
	CreditorSchemeldentification <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		57
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		59
	CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		61
	CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		61
	UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		62
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		64
	DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		66
	DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		66
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		67
	ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>	[0..1]			69
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			69
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			69
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		70
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		71
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		71
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		71
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		71
	OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]			71
{Or	OriginalMandateldentification <OrgnlMndtld>	[1..1]	Text		73
Or}	OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]		C12, C14	73
	Mandateldentification <Mndtld>	[1..1]	Text		75
	MandateRequestldentification <MndtReqlld>	[0..1]	Text		75
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			75
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			75

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		76
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		76
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			76
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		76
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		76
	Occurrences <Ocrncs>	[0..1]			76
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		77
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		77
	Duration <Drtn>	[0..1]	±		78
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		78
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		78
	CollectionAmount <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C7	78
	MaximumAmount <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C7	78
	CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		79
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		81
	CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		83
	CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		83
	UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		84
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		86
	DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		88
	DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		88
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		89
	ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>	[0..1]			91
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			91
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			91
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		92
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		93
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		93
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		93
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		93
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C10	93

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C10	93

3.3 Constraints

C1 ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged. (Algorithm)

C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged. (Algorithm)

C3 AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the BIC directory, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters comprising the first three or all four of the following components: INSTITUTION CODE, COUNTRY CODE, LOCATION CODE, BRANCH CODE. The institution code, country code and location code are mandatory, while the branch code is optional. (Algorithm)

C4 BICFI

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the BIC directory, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters comprising the first three or all four of the following components: INSTITUTION CODE, COUNTRY CODE, LOCATION CODE, BRANCH CODE. The institution code, country code and location code are mandatory, while the branch code is optional. (Algorithm)

C5 Country

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code). (Algorithm)

C6 CurrencyAmount

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot. (Algorithm)

C7 CurrencyAmount

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot. (Algorithm)

C8 IBAN

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN. (Algorithm)

C9 SupplementaryDataRule

The SupplementaryData building block at message level must not be used to provide additional information about a transaction. The SupplementaryData element at transaction level should be used for that purpose.

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C10 SupplementaryDataRule

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

C11 UltimateCreditorGuideline

UltimateCreditor may only be present if different from Creditor.

C12 UltimateCreditorGuideline

UltimateCreditor may only be present if different from Creditor.

C13 UltimateDebtorGuideline

UltimateDebtor may only be present if different from Debtor.

C14 UltimateDebtorGuideline

UltimateDebtor may only be present if different from Debtor.

3.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

3.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Set of characteristics to identify the message and parties playing a role in the amendment of the mandate, but which are not part of the mandate.

GroupHeader <GrpHdr> contains the following **GroupHeader47** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		41
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		41
	Authorisation <Authstn>	[0..2]			41
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		41
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		42
	InitiatingParty <InitgPty>	[0..1]	±		42
	InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		44
	InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		45

3.4.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Point to point reference, as assigned by the instructing party, and sent to the instructed party, to unambiguously identify the message.

Usage: The instructing party has to make sure that MessageIdentification is unique per instructed party for a pre-agreed period.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

3.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Date and time at which the message was created.

Datatype: "ISODateTime" on page 198

3.4.1.3 Authorisation <Authstn>

Presence: [0..2]

Definition: User identification or any user key to be used to check the authority of the initiating party.

Usage: The content is not of a technical nature, but reflects the organisational structure at the initiating side. The authorisation element can typically be used in relay scenarios, payment initiations, payment returns or payment reversals that are initiated on behalf of a party different from the initiating party.

Authorisation <Authstn> contains one of the following **Authorisation1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		41
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		42

3.4.1.3.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the authorisation, in a coded form.

Datatype: "Authorisation1Code" on page 192

CodeName	Name	Definition
AUTH	PreAuthorisedFile	Indicates a file has been pre authorised or approved within the originating customer environment and no further approval is required.
FDET	FileLevelAuthorisationDetails	Indicates that a file requires additional file level approval, with the ability to view both the payment information block and supporting customer credit transaction detail.
FSUM	FileLevelAuthorisationSummary	Indicates that a file requires additional file level approval, with the ability to view only the payment information block level information.

CodeName	Name	Definition
ILEV	InstructionLevelAuthorisation	Indicates that a file requires all customer transactions to be authorised or approved.

3.4.1.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the authorisation, in a free text form.

Datatype: "Max128Text" on page 200

3.4.1.4 InitiatingParty <InitgPty>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party that initiates the mandate message.

InitiatingParty <InitgPty> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification43" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		181
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		181
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			181
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]			187
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

3.4.1.5 InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent that instructs the next party in the chain to carry out an instruction.

Usage Rule:

In case of amendment and cancellation request messages, the instructing agent is the party sending the amendment and cancellation request message and not the party that sent the original mandate initiation request message.

In case of acceptance report message, the instructing agent is the party sending the acceptance report message and not the party that sent the original mandate request message.

InstructingAgent <InstgAgt> contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5](#)" on page 172 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			172
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		173
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]			173
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]			174
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		174
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		174
	MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		174
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]			175
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		175
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			175
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		176
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		176
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		176
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		176

3.4.1.6 InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent that is instructed by the previous party in the chain to carry out an instruction.

Usage Rule:

In case of amendment and cancellation request messages, the instructed agent is the party receiving the amendment and cancellation request message and not the party that received the original mandate initiation request message.

In case of acceptance report message, the instructed agent is the party receiving the acceptance report message and not the party that received the original mandate request message.

InstructedAgent <InstdAgt> contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5](#)" on page 172 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			172
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		173
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]			173
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]			174
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		174
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		174
	MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		174
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]			175
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		175
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			175
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		176
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		176
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		176
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		176

3.4.2 UnderlyingAmendmentDetails <UndrlygAmdmntDtls>

Presence: [1..*]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide details on the amendment request.

UnderlyingAmendmentDetails <UndrlygAmdmntDtls> contains the following **MandateAmendment3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	OriginalMessageInformation <OrgnlMsgInf>	[0..1]	±		48
	AmendmentReason <AmdmntRsn>	[1..1]			48
	Originator <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		49
	Reason <Rsn>	[1..1]			51
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		51
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		51
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		51
	Mandate <Mndt>	[1..1]		C11, C13	51
	MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[1..1]	Text		53
	MandateRequestIdentification <MndtReqId>	[0..1]	Text		53
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			53
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			53
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		54
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		54
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			54
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		54
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		54
	Occurrences <Ocrncs>	[0..1]			54
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		55
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		55
	Duration <Drtn>	[0..1]	±		56
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		56
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		56
	CollectionAmount <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C6	56
	MaximumAmount <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C6	56
	CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		57
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		59
	CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		61
	CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		61
	UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		62

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		64
	DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		66
	DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		66
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		67
	ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>	[0..1]			69
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			69
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			69
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		70
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		71
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		71
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		71
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		71
	OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]			71
{Or	OriginalMandateIdentification <OrgnlMndtId>	[1..1]	Text		73
Or}	OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]		C12, C14	73
	MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[1..1]	Text		75
	MandateRequestIdentification <MndtReqId>	[0..1]	Text		75
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			75
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			75
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		76
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		76
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			76
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		76
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		76
	Occurrences <Ocrncs>	[0..1]			76
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		77
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		77
	Duration <Drtn>	[0..1]	±		78
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		78
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		78
	CollectionAmount <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C7	78

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MaximumAmount <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C7	78
	CreditorSchemeldentification <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		79
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		81
	CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		83
	CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		83
	UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		84
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		86
	DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		88
	DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		88
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		89
	ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>	[0..1]			91
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			91
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			91
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		92
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		93
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		93
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		93
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		93
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C10	93

3.4.2.1 OriginalMessageInformation <OrgnlMsglnf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides information on the original message.

OriginalMessageInformation <OrgnlMsglnf> contains the following elements (see "OriginalMessageInformation1" on page 177 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <Msgld>	[1..1]	Text		178
	MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmld>	[1..1]	Text		178
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		178

3.4.2.2 AmendmentReason <AmdmntRsn>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Provides detailed information on the amendment reason.

AmendmentReason <AmdmntRsn> contains the following **MandateAmendmentReason1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Originator <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		49
	Reason <Rsn>	[1..1]			51
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		51
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		51
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		51

3.4.2.2.1 Originator <Orgtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party that issues the amendment request.

Originator <Orgtr> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification43" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		181
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		181
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			181
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]			187
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

3.4.2.2.2 Reason <Rsn>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the reason for the amendment request.

Reason <Rsn> contains one of the following **MandateReason1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		51
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		51

3.4.2.2.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason, as published in an external reason code list.

Datatype: "ExternalMandateReason1Code" on page 195

3.4.2.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

3.4.2.2.3 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Further details on the amendment request reason.

Datatype: "Max105Text" on page 199

3.4.2.3 Mandate <Mndt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Provides the amended mandate data.

Impacted by: C11 "UltimateCreditorGuideline", C13 "UltimateDebtorGuideline"

Mandate <Mndt> contains the following **Mandate3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[1..1]	Text		53
	MandateRequestIdentification <MndtReqId>	[0..1]	Text		53
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			53
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			53
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		54
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		54
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			54
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		54
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		54
	Occurrences <Ocrncs>	[0..1]			54
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		55
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		55
	Duration <Drtn>	[0..1]	±		56
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		56
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		56
	CollectionAmount <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C6	56
	MaximumAmount <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C6	56
	CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		57
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		59
	CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		61
	CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		61
	UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		62
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		64
	DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		66
	DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		66
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		67
	ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>	[0..1]			69
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			69
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			69
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		70
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		71

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		71
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		71
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		71

Constraints

- **UltimateCreditorGuideline**

UltimateCreditor may only be present if different from Creditor.

- **UltimateDebtorGuideline**

UltimateDebtor may only be present if different from Debtor.

3.4.2.3.1 MandateIdentification <MndtId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously identify the mandate.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

3.4.2.3.2 MandateRequestIdentification <MndtReqId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification for the mandate request, as assigned by the initiating party.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

3.4.2.3.3 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of mandate, such as paper, electronic or scheme.

Type <Tp> contains the following **MandateTypeInformation1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			53
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		54
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		54
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			54
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		54
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		54

3.4.2.3.3.1 ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agreement under which or rules under which the mandate resides.

ServiceLevel <SvcLvl> contains one of the following **ServiceLevel8Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		54
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		54

3.4.2.3.3.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the parties, as published in an external service level code list.

Datatype: "ExternalServiceLevel1Code" on page 196

3.4.2.3.3.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the parties, as a proprietary code.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

3.4.2.3.3.2 LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: User community specific instrument.

Usage: This element is used to specify a local instrument, local clearing option and/or further qualify the service or service level.

LocalInstrument <LclInstrm> contains one of the following **LocalInstrument2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		54
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		54

3.4.2.3.3.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the local instrument, as published in an external local instrument code list.

Datatype: "ExternalLocalInstrument1Code" on page 195

3.4.2.3.3.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the local instrument, as a proprietary code.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

3.4.2.3.4 Occurrences <Ocrncs>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides details of the duration of the mandate and occurrence of the underlying transactions.

Occurrences <Ocrncs> contains the following **MandateOccurrences2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		55
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		55
	Duration <Drtn>	[0..1]	±		56
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		56
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		56

3.4.2.3.4.1 SequenceType <SeqTp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identifies the underlying transaction sequence as either recurring or one-off.

Datatype: "SequenceType2Code" on page 197

CodeName	Name	Definition
RCUR	Recurring	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used for regular direct debit transactions initiated by the creditor.
OOFF	OneOff	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used to initiate one single direct debit transaction.

3.4.2.3.4.2 Frequency <Frqcy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Regularity with which instructions are to be created and processed.

Datatype: "Frequency6Code" on page 196

CodeName	Name	Definition
YEAR	Annual	Event takes place every year or once a year.
MNTH	Monthly	Event takes place every month or once a month.
QURT	Quarterly	Event takes place every three months or four times a year.
MIAN	SemiAnnual	Event takes place every six months or two times a year.
WEEK	Weekly	Event takes place once a week.
DAIL	Daily	Event takes place every day.
ADHO	Adhoc	Event takes place on request or as necessary.
INDA	IntraDay	Event takes place several times a day.

CodeName	Name	Definition
FRTN	Fortnightly	Event takes place every two weeks.

3.4.2.3.4.3 Duration <Drtn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Length of time for which the mandate remains valid.

Duration <Drtn> contains the following elements (see "DatePeriodDetails1" on page 171 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		171
	ToDate <ToDt>	[0..1]	Date		171

3.4.2.3.4.4 FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date of the first collection of a direct debit as per the mandate.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 197

3.4.2.3.4.5 FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date of the final collection of a direct debit as per the mandate.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 197

3.4.2.3.5 CollectionAmount <ColltnAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Fixed amount to be collected from the debtor's account.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 190

Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

3.4.2.3.6 MaximumAmount <MaxAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Maximum amount that may be collected from the debtor's account, per instruction.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 190

Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

3.4.2.3.7 CreditorSchemeldentification <CdtrSchmeld>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Credit party that signs the mandate.

CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmId> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification43" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		181
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		181
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			181
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]			187
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

3.4.2.3.8 Creditor <Cdtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party that signs the mandate and to whom an amount of money is due.

Creditor <Cdtr> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification43" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		181
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		181
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			181
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]			187
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

3.4.2.3.9 CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the creditor to which a credit entry will be posted as a result of the payment transaction.

CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct> contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount24](#)" on page 168 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		168
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		168
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		169
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		169

3.4.2.3.10 CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Financial institution servicing an account for the creditor.

CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt> contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5" on page 172 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			172
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		173
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]			173
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]			174
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		174
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		174
	MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		174
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]			175
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		175
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			175
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		176
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		176
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		176
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		176

3.4.2.3.11 UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Ultimate party to which an amount of money is due.

UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification43" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		181
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		181
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			181
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]			187
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

3.4.2.3.12 Debtor <Dbtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party that signs the mandate and owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

Debtor <Dbtr> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification43" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		181
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		181
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			181
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]			187
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

3.4.2.3.13 DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the debtor, to which a debit entry will be made as a result of the transaction.

DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct> contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount24](#)" on page 168 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		168
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		168
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		169
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		169

3.4.2.3.14 DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Financial institution servicing an account for the debtor.

DebtorAgent <DbtrAg> contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5" on page 172 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			172
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		173
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]			173
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]			174
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		174
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		174
	MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		174
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]			175
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		175
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			175
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		176
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		176
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		176
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		176

3.4.2.3.15 UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification43" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		181
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		181
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			181
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]			187
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

3.4.2.3.16 ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides information to identify the underlying documents associated with the mandate.

ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc> contains the following **ReferredDocumentInformation3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			69
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			69
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		70
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		71
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		71
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		71
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		71

3.4.2.3.16.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of referred document.

Type <Tp> contains the following **ReferredDocumentType2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			69
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		70
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		71
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		71

3.4.2.3.16.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Provides the type details of the referred document.

CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry> contains one of the following **ReferredDocumentType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		70
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		71

3.4.2.3.16.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Document type in a coded form.

Datatype: "DocumentType5Code" on page 193

CodeName	Name	Definition
MSIN	MeteredServiceInvoice	Document is an invoice claiming payment for the supply of metered services, for example gas or electricity supplied to a fixed meter.
CNFA	CreditNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a credit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
DNFA	DebitNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a debit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
CINV	CommercialInvoice	Document is an invoice.
CREN	CreditNote	Document is a credit note.
DEBN	DebitNote	Document is a debit note.
HIRI	HireInvoice	Document is an invoice for the hiring of human resources or renting goods or equipment.
SBIN	SelfBilledInvoice	Document is an invoice issued by the debtor.
CMCN	CommercialContract	Document is an agreement between the parties, stipulating the terms and conditions of the delivery of goods or services.
SOAC	StatementOfAccount	Document is a statement of the transactions posted to the debtor's account at the supplier.
DISP	DispatchAdvice	Document is a dispatch advice.
BOLD	BillOfLading	Document is a shipping notice.
VCHR	Voucher	Document is an electronic payment document.
AROI	AccountReceivableOpenItem	Document is a payment that applies to a specific source document.
TSUT	TradeServicesUtilityTransaction	Document is a transaction identifier as assigned by the Trade Services Utility.

3.4.2.3.16.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Proprietary identification of the type of the remittance document.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

3.4.2.3.16.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the issuer of the reference document type.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

3.4.2.3.16.2 Number <Nb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of the referred document.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

3.4.2.3.16.3 RelatedDate <RltdDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date associated with the referred document.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 197

3.4.2.4 OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Provides the original mandate data.

OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt> contains one of the following **OriginalMandate2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	OriginalMandateIdentification <OrgnlMndtId>	[1..1]	Text		73
Or}	OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]		C12, C14	73
	MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[1..1]	Text		75
	MandateRequestIdentification <MndtReqId>	[0..1]	Text		75
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			75
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			75
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		76
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		76
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			76
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		76
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		76
	Occurrences <Ocrncs>	[0..1]			76
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		77
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		77
	Duration <Drtn>	[0..1]	±		78
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		78
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		78
	CollectionAmount <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C7	78
	MaximumAmount <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C7	78
	CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmId>	[0..1]	±		79
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		81
	CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		83
	CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		83
	UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		84
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		86
	DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		88
	DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		88
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		89
	ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>	[0..1]			91
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			91

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			91
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		92
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		93
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		93
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		93
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		93

3.4.2.4.1 OriginalMandateIdentification <OrgnlMndtId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously identify the original mandate.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

3.4.2.4.2 OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Provides the original mandate data.

Impacted by: C12 "UltimateCreditorGuideline", C14 "UltimateDebtorGuideline"

OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt> contains the following **Mandate1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[1..1]	Text		75
	MandateRequestIdentification <MndtReqId>	[0..1]	Text		75
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			75
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			75
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		76
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		76
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			76
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		76
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		76
	Occurrences <Ocrncs>	[0..1]			76
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		77
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		77
	Duration <Drtn>	[0..1]	±		78
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		78
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		78
	CollectionAmount <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C7	78
	MaximumAmount <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C7	78
	CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		79
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		81
	CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		83
	CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		83
	UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		84
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		86
	DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		88
	DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		88
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		89
	ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>	[0..1]			91
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			91
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			91
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		92
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		93

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		93
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		93
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		93

Constraints

- **UltimateCreditorGuideline**

UltimateCreditor may only be present if different from Creditor.

- **UltimateDebtorGuideline**

UltimateDebtor may only be present if different from Debtor.

3.4.2.4.2.1 MandateIdentification <MndtId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously identify the mandate.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

3.4.2.4.2.2 MandateRequestIdentification <MndtReqlId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification for the mandate request, as assigned by the initiating party.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

3.4.2.4.2.3 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of mandate, such as paper, electronic or scheme.

Type <Tp> contains the following **MandateTypeInformation1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			75
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		76
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		76
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			76
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		76
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		76

3.4.2.4.2.3.1 ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agreement under which or rules under which the mandate resides.

ServiceLevel <SvcLvl> contains one of the following **ServiceLevel8Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		76
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		76

3.4.2.4.2.3.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the parties, as published in an external service level code list.

Datatype: "ExternalServiceLevel1Code" on page 196

3.4.2.4.2.3.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the parties, as a proprietary code.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

3.4.2.4.2.3.2 LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: User community specific instrument.

Usage: This element is used to specify a local instrument, local clearing option and/or further qualify the service or service level.

LocalInstrument <LclInstrm> contains one of the following **LocalInstrument2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		76
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		76

3.4.2.4.2.3.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the local instrument, as published in an external local instrument code list.

Datatype: "ExternalLocalInstrument1Code" on page 195

3.4.2.4.2.3.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the local instrument, as a proprietary code.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

3.4.2.4.2.4 Occurrences <Ocrncs>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides details of the duration of the mandate and occurrence of the underlying transactions.

Occurrences <Ocrncs> contains the following **MandateOccurrences2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		77
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		77
	Duration <Drtn>	[0..1]	±		78
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		78
	FinalCollectionDate <FnIColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		78

3.4.2.4.2.4.1 SequenceType <SeqTp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identifies the underlying transaction sequence as either recurring or one-off.

Datatype: "SequenceType2Code" on page 197

CodeName	Name	Definition
RCUR	Recurring	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used for regular direct debit transactions initiated by the creditor.
OOFF	OneOff	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used to initiate one single direct debit transaction.

3.4.2.4.2.4.2 Frequency <Frqcy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Regularity with which instructions are to be created and processed.

Datatype: "Frequency6Code" on page 196

CodeName	Name	Definition
YEAR	Annual	Event takes place every year or once a year.
MNTH	Monthly	Event takes place every month or once a month.
QURT	Quarterly	Event takes place every three months or four times a year.
MIAN	SemiAnnual	Event takes place every six months or two times a year.
WEEK	Weekly	Event takes place once a week.
DAIL	Daily	Event takes place every day.
ADHO	Adhoc	Event takes place on request or as necessary.
INDA	IntraDay	Event takes place several times a day.
FRTN	Fortnightly	Event takes place every two weeks.

3.4.2.4.2.4.3 Duration <Drtn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Length of time for which the mandate remains valid.

Duration <Drtn> contains the following elements (see "DatePeriodDetails1" on page 171 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		171
	ToDate <ToDt>	[0..1]	Date		171

3.4.2.4.2.4.4 FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date of the first collection of a direct debit as per the mandate.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 197

3.4.2.4.2.4.5 FinalCollectionDate <FnIColltnDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date of the final collection of a direct debit as per the mandate.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 197

3.4.2.4.2.5 CollectionAmount <ColltnAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Fixed amount to be collected from the debtor's account.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 191

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

3.4.2.4.2.6 MaximumAmount <MaxAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Maximum amount that may be collected from the debtor's account, per instruction.

Impacted by: C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 191

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

3.4.2.4.2.7 CreditorSchemeldentification <CdtrSchmeld>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Credit party that signs the mandate.

CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmId> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification43" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		181
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		181
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			181
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]			187
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

3.4.2.4.2.8 Creditor <Cdtr>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Party that signs the mandate and to whom an amount of money is due.

Creditor <Cdtr> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification43" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		181
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		181
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			181
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]			187
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

3.4.2.4.2.9 CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the creditor to which a credit entry will be posted as a result of the payment transaction.

CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct> contains the following elements (see "CashAccount24" on page 168 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		168
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		168
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		169
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		169

3.4.2.4.2.10 CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Financial institution servicing an account for the creditor.

CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt> contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5" on page 172 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			172
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		173
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]			173
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]			174
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		174
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		174
	MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		174
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]			175
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		175
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			175
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		176
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		176
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		176
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		176

3.4.2.4.2.11 UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Ultimate party to which an amount of money is due.

UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification43" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		181
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		181
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			181
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]			187
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

3.4.2.4.2.12 Debtor <Dbtr>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Party that signs the mandate and owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

Debtor <Dbtr> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification43" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		181
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		181
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			181
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]			187
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

3.4.2.4.2.13 DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the debtor, to which a debit entry will be made as a result of the transaction.

DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct> contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount24](#)" on page 168 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		168
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		168
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		169
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		169

3.4.2.4.2.14 DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Financial institution servicing an account for the debtor.

DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt> contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5" on page 172 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			172
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		173
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]			173
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]			174
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		174
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		174
	MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		174
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]			175
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		175
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			175
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		176
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		176
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		176
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		176

3.4.2.4.2.15 UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification43" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		181
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		181
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			181
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]			187
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

3.4.2.4.2.16 ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides information to identify the underlying documents associated with the mandate.

ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc> contains the following **ReferredDocumentInformation3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			91
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			91
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		92
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		93
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		93
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		93
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		93

3.4.2.4.2.16.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of referred document.

Type <Tp> contains the following **ReferredDocumentType2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			91
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		92
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		93
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		93

3.4.2.4.2.16.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Provides the type details of the referred document.

CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry> contains one of the following **ReferredDocumentType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		92
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		93

3.4.2.4.2.16.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Document type in a coded form.

Datatype: "DocumentType5Code" on page 193

CodeName	Name	Definition
MSIN	MeteredServiceInvoice	Document is an invoice claiming payment for the supply of metered services, for example gas or electricity supplied to a fixed meter.
CNFA	CreditNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a credit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
DNFA	DebitNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a debit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
CINV	CommercialInvoice	Document is an invoice.
CREN	CreditNote	Document is a credit note.
DEBN	DebitNote	Document is a debit note.
HIRI	HireInvoice	Document is an invoice for the hiring of human resources or renting goods or equipment.
SBIN	SelfBilledInvoice	Document is an invoice issued by the debtor.
CMCN	CommercialContract	Document is an agreement between the parties, stipulating the terms and conditions of the delivery of goods or services.
SOAC	StatementOfAccount	Document is a statement of the transactions posted to the debtor's account at the supplier.
DISP	DispatchAdvice	Document is a dispatch advice.
BOLD	BillOfLading	Document is a shipping notice.
VCHR	Voucher	Document is an electronic payment document.
AROI	AccountReceivableOpenItem	Document is a payment that applies to a specific source document.
TSUT	TradeServicesUtilityTransaction	Document is a transaction identifier as assigned by the Trade Services Utility.

3.4.2.4.2.16.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Proprietary identification of the type of the remittance document.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 201**3.4.2.4.2.16.1.2 Issuer <Issr>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Identification of the issuer of the reference document type.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 201**3.4.2.4.2.16.2 Number <Nb>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the referred document.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 201**3.4.2.4.2.16.3 RelatedDate <RltdDt>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Date associated with the referred document.*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 197**3.4.2.5 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>***Presence:* [0..*]*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.*Impacted by:* C10 "SupplementaryDataRule"**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 178 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		178
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]			179
	Contents <Cnts>	[1..1]	(User Defined)		179

Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

3.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>*Presence:* [0..*]

Definition: Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

Impacted by: C10 "SupplementaryDataRule"

SupplementaryData <SplmtryData> contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 178 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		178
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]			179
	Contents <Cnts>	[1..1]	(User Defined)		179

Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

4 **pain.011.001.03 MandateCancellationRequestV03**

4.1 **MessageDefinition Functionality**

Scope

The MandateCancellationRequest message is sent by the initiator of the request to his agent. The initiator can either be the debtor or the creditor.

The MandateCancellationRequest message is forwarded by the agent of the initiator to the agent of the counterparty.

A MandateCancellationRequest message is used to request the cancellation of an existing mandate. If accepted, this MandateCancellationRequest message together with the MandateAcceptanceReport message confirming the acceptance will be considered a valid cancellation of an existing mandate, agreed upon by all parties.

Usage

The MandateCancellationRequest message can contain one or more request(s) to cancel a specific mandate.

The messages can be exchanged between creditor and creditor agent or debtor and debtor agent and between creditor agent and debtor agent.

The message can also be used by an initiating party that has authority to send the message on behalf of the creditor or debtor.

The MandateCancellationRequest message can be used in domestic and cross-border scenarios.

Outline

The MandateCancellationRequestV03 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. GroupHeader

Set of characteristics to identify the message and parties playing a role in the cancellation of the mandate, but which are not part of the mandate.

B. UnderlyingCancellationDetails

Set of elements used to provide details on the cancellation request.

C. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

4.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <MndtCxlReq>	[1..1]		C7	
	GroupHeader <GrpHdr>	[1..1]			99
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		99
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		99
	Authorisation <Authstn>	[0..2]			99
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		100
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		100
	InitiatingParty <InitgPty>	[0..1]	±		100
	InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		102
	InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		103
	UnderlyingCancellationDetails <UndrlygCxlDtls>	[1..*]			103
	OriginalMessageInformation <OrgnlMsgInf>	[0..1]	±		105
	CancellationReason <CxlRsn>	[1..1]			105
	Originator <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		106
	Reason <Rsn>	[1..1]			108
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		108
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		108
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		108
	OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]			108
{Or	OriginalMandateIdentification <OrgnlMndtId>	[1..1]	Text		110
Or}	OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]		C9, C10	110
	MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[1..1]	Text		112
	MandateRequestIdentification <MndtReqId>	[0..1]	Text		112
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			112
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			112
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		113
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		113
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			113
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		113
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		113

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Occurrences <Ocrncs>	[0..1]			113
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		114
	Duration <Drtn>	[0..1]	±		115
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		115
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		115
	CollectionAmount <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	115
	MaximumAmount <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	115
	CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		116
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		118
	CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		120
	CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		120
	UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		121
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		123
	DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		125
	DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		125
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		126
	ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>	[0..1]			128
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			128
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			128
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		129
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		130
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		130
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		130
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		130
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C8	130
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C8	130

4.3 Constraints

C1 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) con-

tiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged. (Algorithm)

C2 AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the BIC directory, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters comprising the first three or all four of the following components: INSTITUTION CODE, COUNTRY CODE, LOCATION CODE, BRANCH CODE. The institution code, country code and location code are mandatory, while the branch code is optional. (Algorithm)

C3 BICFI

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the BIC directory, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters comprising the first three or all four of the following components: INSTITUTION CODE, COUNTRY CODE, LOCATION CODE, BRANCH CODE. The institution code, country code and location code are mandatory, while the branch code is optional. (Algorithm)

C4 Country

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code). (Algorithm)

C5 CurrencyAmount

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot. (Algorithm)

C6 IBAN

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN. (Algorithm)

C7 SupplementaryDataRule

The SupplementaryData building block at message level must not be used to provide additional information about a transaction. The SupplementaryData element at transaction level should be used for that purpose.

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C8 SupplementaryDataRule

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

C9 UltimateCreditorGuideline

UltimateCreditor may only be present if different from Creditor.

C10 UltimateDebtorGuideline

UltimateDebtor may only be present if different from Debtor.

4.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

4.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Set of characteristics to identify the message and parties playing a role in the cancellation of the mandate, but which are not part of the mandate.

GroupHeader <GrpHdr> contains the following **GroupHeader47** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		99
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		99
	Authorisation <Authstn>	[0..2]			99
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		100
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		100
	InitiatingParty <InitgPty>	[0..1]	±		100
	InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		102
	InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		103

4.4.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Point to point reference, as assigned by the instructing party, and sent to the instructed party, to unambiguously identify the message.

Usage: The instructing party has to make sure that MessageIdentification is unique per instructed party for a pre-agreed period.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

4.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Date and time at which the message was created.

Datatype: "ISODateTime" on page 198

4.4.1.3 Authorisation <Authstn>

Presence: [0..2]

Definition: User identification or any user key to be used to check the authority of the initiating party.

Usage: The content is not of a technical nature, but reflects the organisational structure at the initiating side. The authorisation element can typically be used in relay scenarios, payment initiations, payment returns or payment reversals that are initiated on behalf of a party different from the initiating party.

Authorisation <Authstn> contains one of the following **Authorisation1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		100
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		100

4.4.1.3.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the authorisation, in a coded form.

Datatype: "Authorisation1Code" on page 192

CodeName	Name	Definition
AUTH	PreAuthorisedFile	Indicates a file has been pre authorised or approved within the originating customer environment and no further approval is required.
FDET	FileLevelAuthorisationDetails	Indicates that a file requires additional file level approval, with the ability to view both the payment information block and supporting customer credit transaction detail.
FSUM	FileLevelAuthorisationSummary	Indicates that a file requires additional file level approval, with the ability to view only the payment information block level information.
ILEV	InstructionLevelAuthorisation	Indicates that a file requires all customer transactions to be authorised or approved.

4.4.1.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the authorisation, in a free text form.

Datatype: "Max128Text" on page 200

4.4.1.4 InitiatingParty <InitgPty>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party that initiates the mandate message.

InitiatingParty <InitgPty> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification43" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		181
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		181
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			181
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]			187
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

4.4.1.5 InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent that instructs the next party in the chain to carry out an instruction.

Usage Rule:

In case of amendment and cancellation request messages, the instructing agent is the party sending the amendment and cancellation request message and not the party that sent the original mandate initiation request message.

In case of acceptance report message, the instructing agent is the party sending the acceptance report message and not the party that sent the original mandate request message.

InstructingAgent <InstgAgt> contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5](#)" on page 172 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			172
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		173
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]			173
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]			174
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		174
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		174
	MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		174
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]			175
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		175
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			175
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		176
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		176
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		176
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		176

4.4.1.6 InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent that is instructed by the previous party in the chain to carry out an instruction.

Usage Rule:

In case of amendment and cancellation request messages, the instructed agent is the party receiving the amendment and cancellation request message and not the party that received the original mandate initiation request message.

In case of acceptance report message, the instructed agent is the party receiving the acceptance report message and not the party that received the original mandate request message.

InstructedAgent <InstdAgt> contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5](#)" on page 172 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			172
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		173
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]			173
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]			174
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		174
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		174
	MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		174
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]			175
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		175
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			175
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		176
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		176
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		176
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		176

4.4.2 UnderlyingCancellationDetails <UndrlygCxlDtls>

Presence: [1..*]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide details on the cancellation request.

UnderlyingCancellationDetails <UndrlygCxlDtls> contains the following **MandateCancellation3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	OriginalMessageInformation <OrgnlMsgInf>	[0..1]	±		105
	CancellationReason <CxlRsn>	[1..1]			105
	Originator <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		106
	Reason <Rsn>	[1..1]			108
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		108
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		108
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		108
	OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]			108
{Or	OriginalMandateIdentification <OrgnlMndtId>	[1..1]	Text		110
Or}	OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]		C9, C10	110
	MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[1..1]	Text		112
	MandateRequestIdentification <MndtReqId>	[0..1]	Text		112
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			112
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			112
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		113
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		113
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			113
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		113
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		113
	Occurrences <Ocrncs>	[0..1]			113
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		114
	Duration <Drtn>	[0..1]	±		115
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		115
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		115
	CollectionAmount <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	115
	MaximumAmount <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	115
	CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		116
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		118
	CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		120

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		120
	UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		121
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		123
	DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		125
	DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		125
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		126
	ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>	[0..1]			128
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			128
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			128
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		129
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		130
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		130
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		130
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		130
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C8	130

4.4.2.1 OriginalMessageInformation <OrgnlMsgInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides information on the original message.

OriginalMessageInformation <OrgnlMsgInf> contains the following elements (see "[OriginalMessageInformation1](#)" on page 177 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		178
	MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		178
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		178

4.4.2.2 CancellationReason <CxlRsn>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Provides detailed information on the cancellation reason.

CancellationReason <CxlRsn> contains the following **PaymentCancellationReason1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Originator <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		106
	Reason <Rsn>	[1..1]			108
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		108
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		108
	AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		108

4.4.2.2.1 Originator <Orgtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party that issues the cancellation request.

Originator <Orgtr> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification43" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		181
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		181
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			181
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]			187
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

4.4.2.2.2 Reason <Rsn>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the reason for the cancellation request.

Reason <Rsn> contains one of the following **MandateReason1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		108
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		108

4.4.2.2.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason, as published in an external reason code list.

Datatype: "ExternalMandateReason1Code" on page 195

4.4.2.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

4.4.2.2.3 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Further details on the cancellation request reason.

Datatype: "Max105Text" on page 199

4.4.2.3 OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Provides the original mandate data.

OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt> contains one of the following **OriginalMandate2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	OriginalMandateIdentification <OrgnlMndtId>	[1..1]	Text		110
Or}	OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]		C9, C10	110
	MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[1..1]	Text		112
	MandateRequestIdentification <MndtReqId>	[0..1]	Text		112
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			112
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			112
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		113
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		113
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			113
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		113
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		113
	Occurrences <Ocrncs>	[0..1]			113
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		114
	Duration <Drtn>	[0..1]	±		115
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		115
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		115
	CollectionAmount <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	115
	MaximumAmount <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	115
	CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmId>	[0..1]	±		116
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		118
	CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		120
	CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		120
	UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		121
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		123
	DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		125
	DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		125
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		126
	ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>	[0..1]			128
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			128
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			128

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		129
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		130
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		130
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		130
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		130

4.4.2.3.1 OriginalMandateIdentification <OrgnlMndtId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously identify the original mandate.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

4.4.2.3.2 OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Provides the original mandate data.

Impacted by: C9 "UltimateCreditorGuideline", C10 "UltimateDebtorGuideline"

OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt> contains the following **Mandate1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[1..1]	Text		112
	MandateRequestIdentification <MndtReqId>	[0..1]	Text		112
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			112
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			112
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		113
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		113
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			113
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		113
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		113
	Occurrences <Ocrncs>	[0..1]			113
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		114
	Duration <Drtn>	[0..1]	±		115
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		115
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		115
	CollectionAmount <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	115
	MaximumAmount <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	115
	CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		116
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		118
	CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		120
	CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		120
	UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		121
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		123
	DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		125
	DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		125
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		126
	ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>	[0..1]			128
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			128
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			128
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		129
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		130

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		130
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		130
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		130

Constraints

- **UltimateCreditorGuideline**

UltimateCreditor may only be present if different from Creditor.

- **UltimateDebtorGuideline**

UltimateDebtor may only be present if different from Debtor.

4.4.2.3.2.1 MandateIdentification <MndtId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously identify the mandate.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

4.4.2.3.2.2 MandateRequestIdentification <MndtReqlId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification for the mandate request, as assigned by the initiating party.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

4.4.2.3.2.3 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of mandate, such as paper, electronic or scheme.

Type <Tp> contains the following **MandateTypeInformation1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			112
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		113
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		113
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			113
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		113
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		113

4.4.2.3.2.3.1 ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agreement under which or rules under which the mandate resides.

ServiceLevel <SvcLvl> contains one of the following **ServiceLevel8Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		113
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		113

4.4.2.3.2.3.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the parties, as published in an external service level code list.

Datatype: "ExternalServiceLevel1Code" on page 196

4.4.2.3.2.3.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the parties, as a proprietary code.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

4.4.2.3.2.3.2 LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: User community specific instrument.

Usage: This element is used to specify a local instrument, local clearing option and/or further qualify the service or service level.

LocalInstrument <LclInstrm> contains one of the following **LocalInstrument2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		113
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		113

4.4.2.3.2.3.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the local instrument, as published in an external local instrument code list.

Datatype: "ExternalLocalInstrument1Code" on page 195

4.4.2.3.2.3.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the local instrument, as a proprietary code.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

4.4.2.3.2.4 Occurrences <Ocrncs>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides details of the duration of the mandate and occurrence of the underlying transactions.

Occurrences <Ocrncs> contains the following **MandateOccurrences2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		114
	Duration <Drtn>	[0..1]	±		115
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		115
	FinalCollectionDate <FnIColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		115

4.4.2.3.2.4.1 SequenceType <SeqTp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identifies the underlying transaction sequence as either recurring or one-off.

Datatype: "SequenceType2Code" on page 197

CodeName	Name	Definition
RCUR	Recurring	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used for regular direct debit transactions initiated by the creditor.
OOFF	OneOff	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used to initiate one single direct debit transaction.

4.4.2.3.2.4.2 Frequency <Frqcy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Regularity with which instructions are to be created and processed.

Datatype: "Frequency6Code" on page 196

CodeName	Name	Definition
YEAR	Annual	Event takes place every year or once a year.
MNTH	Monthly	Event takes place every month or once a month.
QURT	Quarterly	Event takes place every three months or four times a year.
MIAN	SemiAnnual	Event takes place every six months or two times a year.
WEEK	Weekly	Event takes place once a week.
DAIL	Daily	Event takes place every day.
ADHO	Adhoc	Event takes place on request or as necessary.
INDA	IntraDay	Event takes place several times a day.
FRTN	Fortnightly	Event takes place every two weeks.

4.4.2.3.2.4.3 Duration <Drtn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Length of time for which the mandate remains valid.

Duration <Drtn> contains the following elements (see "DatePeriodDetails1" on page 171 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		171
	ToDate <ToDt>	[0..1]	Date		171

4.4.2.3.2.4.4 FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date of the first collection of a direct debit as per the mandate.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 197

4.4.2.3.2.4.5 FinalCollectionDate <FnIColltnDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date of the final collection of a direct debit as per the mandate.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 197

4.4.2.3.2.5 CollectionAmount <ColltnAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Fixed amount to be collected from the debtor's account.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C5 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 191

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

4.4.2.3.2.6 MaximumAmount <MaxAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Maximum amount that may be collected from the debtor's account, per instruction.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C5 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 191

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

4.4.2.3.2.7 CreditorSchemeldentification <CdtrSchmeld>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Credit party that signs the mandate.

CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmId> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification43" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		181
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		181
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			181
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]			187
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

4.4.2.3.2.8 Creditor <Cdtr>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Party that signs the mandate and to whom an amount of money is due.

Creditor <Cdtr> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification43" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		181
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		181
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			181
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]			187
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

4.4.2.3.2.9 CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the creditor to which a credit entry will be posted as a result of the payment transaction.

CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct> contains the following elements (see "CashAccount24" on page 168 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		168
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		168
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		169
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		169

4.4.2.3.2.10 CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Financial institution servicing an account for the creditor.

CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt> contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5" on page 172 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			172
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		173
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]			173
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]			174
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		174
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		174
	MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		174
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]			175
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		175
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			175
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		176
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		176
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		176
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		176

4.4.2.3.2.11 UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Ultimate party to which an amount of money is due.

UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification43" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		181
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		181
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			181
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]			187
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

4.4.2.3.2.12 Debtor <Dbtr>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Party that signs the mandate and owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

Debtor <Dbtr> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification43" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		181
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		181
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			181
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]			187
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

4.4.2.3.2.13 DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the debtor, to which a debit entry will be made as a result of the transaction.

DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct> contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount24](#)" on page 168 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		168
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		168
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		169
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		169

4.4.2.3.2.14 DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Financial institution servicing an account for the debtor.

DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt> contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5" on page 172 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			172
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		173
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]			173
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]			174
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		174
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		174
	MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		174
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]			175
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		175
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			175
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		176
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		176
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		176
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		176

4.4.2.3.2.15 UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification43" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		181
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		181
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			181
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]			187
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

4.4.2.3.2.16 ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides information to identify the underlying documents associated with the mandate.

ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc> contains the following **ReferredDocumentInformation3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			128
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			128
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		129
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		130
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		130
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		130
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		130

4.4.2.3.2.16.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of referred document.

Type <Tp> contains the following **ReferredDocumentType2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			128
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		129
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		130
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		130

4.4.2.3.2.16.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Provides the type details of the referred document.

CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry> contains one of the following **ReferredDocumentType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		129
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		130

4.4.2.3.2.16.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Document type in a coded form.

Datatype: "DocumentType5Code" on page 193

CodeName	Name	Definition
MSIN	MeteredServiceInvoice	Document is an invoice claiming payment for the supply of metered services, for example gas or electricity supplied to a fixed meter.
CNFA	CreditNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a credit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
DNFA	DebitNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a debit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
CINV	CommercialInvoice	Document is an invoice.
CREN	CreditNote	Document is a credit note.
DEBN	DebitNote	Document is a debit note.
HIRI	HireInvoice	Document is an invoice for the hiring of human resources or renting goods or equipment.
SBIN	SelfBilledInvoice	Document is an invoice issued by the debtor.
CMCN	CommercialContract	Document is an agreement between the parties, stipulating the terms and conditions of the delivery of goods or services.
SOAC	StatementOfAccount	Document is a statement of the transactions posted to the debtor's account at the supplier.
DISP	DispatchAdvice	Document is a dispatch advice.
BOLD	BillOfLading	Document is a shipping notice.
VCHR	Voucher	Document is an electronic payment document.
AROI	AccountReceivableOpenItem	Document is a payment that applies to a specific source document.
TSUT	TradeServicesUtilityTransaction	Document is a transaction identifier as assigned by the Trade Services Utility.

4.4.2.3.2.16.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Proprietary identification of the type of the remittance document.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 201**4.4.2.3.2.16.1.2 Issuer <Issr>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Identification of the issuer of the reference document type.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 201**4.4.2.3.2.16.2 Number <Nb>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the referred document.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 201**4.4.2.3.2.16.3 RelatedDate <RltdDt>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Date associated with the referred document.*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 197**4.4.2.4 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>***Presence:* [0..*]*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.*Impacted by:* C8 "SupplementaryDataRule"**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 178 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		178
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]			179
	Contents <Cnts>	[1..1]	(User Defined)		179

Constraints

- SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

4.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>*Presence:* [0..*]

Definition: Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

Impacted by: C8 "SupplementaryDataRule"

SupplementaryData <SplmtryData> contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 178 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		178
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]			179
	Contents <Cnts>	[1..1]	(User Defined)		179

Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

5 **pain.012.001.03 MandateAcceptanceReportV03**

5.1 **MessageDefinition Functionality**

Scope

The MandateAcceptanceReport message is sent from the agent of the receiver (debtor or creditor) of the MandateRequest message (initiation, amendment or cancellation) to the agent of the initiator of the MandateRequest message (debtor or creditor).

A MandateAcceptanceReport message is used to confirm the acceptance or rejection of a MandateRequest message. Where acceptance is part of the full process flow, a MandateRequest message only becomes valid after a confirmation of acceptance is received through a MandateAcceptanceReport message from the agent of the receiver.

Usage

The MandateAcceptanceReport message can contain one or more confirmation(s) of acceptance or rejection of a specific Mandate Request .

The messages can be exchanged between debtor agent and creditor agent and between debtor agent and debtor and creditor agent and creditor.

The MandateAcceptanceReport message can be used in domestic and cross-border scenarios.

Outline

The MandateAcceptanceReportV03 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. GroupHeader

Set of characteristics to identify the message and parties playing a role in the mandate acceptance, but which are not part of the mandate.

B. UnderlyingAcceptanceDetails

Set of elements used to provide information on the acceptance or rejection of the mandate request.

C. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

5.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <MndtAcptncRpt>	[1..1]		C7	
	GroupHeader <GrpHdr>	[1..1]			136
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		136
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		136
	Authorisation <Authstn>	[0..2]			136
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		137
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		137
	InitiatingParty <InitgPty>	[0..1]	±		137
	InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		139
	InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		140
	UnderlyingAcceptanceDetails <UndrlygAcptncDtls>	[1..*]			140
	OriginalMessageInformation <OrgnlMsgInf>	[0..1]	±		142
	AcceptanceResult <AcptncRslt>	[1..1]			142
	Accepted <Acctpd>	[1..1]	Indicator		143
	RejectReason <RjctRsn>	[0..1]			143
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		143
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		143
	AdditionalRejectReasonInformation <AddtlRjctRsnInf>	[0..*]	Text		143
	OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]			144
{Or	OriginalMandateIdentification <OrgnlMndtId>	[1..1]	Text		146
Or}	OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]		C9, C10	146
	MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[1..1]	Text		148
	MandateRequestIdentification <MndtReqId>	[0..1]	Text		148
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			148
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			148
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		149
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		149
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			149
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		149
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		149

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Occurrences <Ocrncs>	[0..1]			149
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		150
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		150
	Duration <Drtn>	[0..1]	±		151
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		151
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		151
	CollectionAmount <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	151
	MaximumAmount <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	151
	CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		152
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		154
	CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		156
	CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		156
	UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		157
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		159
	DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		161
	DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		161
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		162
	ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>	[0..1]			164
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			164
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			164
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		165
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		166
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		166
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		166
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		166
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C8	166
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C8	166

5.3 Constraints

C1 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) con-

tiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged. (Algorithm)

C2 AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the BIC directory, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters comprising the first three or all four of the following components: INSTITUTION CODE, COUNTRY CODE, LOCATION CODE, BRANCH CODE. The institution code, country code and location code are mandatory, while the branch code is optional. (Algorithm)

C3 BICFI

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the BIC directory, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters comprising the first three or all four of the following components: INSTITUTION CODE, COUNTRY CODE, LOCATION CODE, BRANCH CODE. The institution code, country code and location code are mandatory, while the branch code is optional. (Algorithm)

C4 Country

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code). (Algorithm)

C5 CurrencyAmount

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot. (Algorithm)

C6 IBAN

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN. (Algorithm)

C7 SupplementaryDataRule

The SupplementaryData building block at message level must not be used to provide additional information about a transaction. The SupplementaryData element at transaction level should be used for that purpose.

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C8 SupplementaryDataRule

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

C9 UltimateCreditorGuideline

UltimateCreditor may only be present if different from Creditor.

C10 UltimateDebtorGuideline

UltimateDebtor may only be present if different from Debtor.

5.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

5.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Set of characteristics to identify the message and parties playing a role in the mandate acceptance, but which are not part of the mandate.

GroupHeader <GrpHdr> contains the following **GroupHeader47** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		136
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		136
	Authorisation <Authstn>	[0..2]			136
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		137
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		137
	InitiatingParty <InitgPty>	[0..1]	±		137
	InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		139
	InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		140

5.4.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Point to point reference, as assigned by the instructing party, and sent to the instructed party, to unambiguously identify the message.

Usage: The instructing party has to make sure that MessageIdentification is unique per instructed party for a pre-agreed period.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

5.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Date and time at which the message was created.

Datatype: "ISODateTime" on page 198

5.4.1.3 Authorisation <Authstn>

Presence: [0..2]

Definition: User identification or any user key to be used to check the authority of the initiating party.

Usage: The content is not of a technical nature, but reflects the organisational structure at the initiating side. The authorisation element can typically be used in relay scenarios, payment initiations, payment returns or payment reversals that are initiated on behalf of a party different from the initiating party.

Authorisation <Authstn> contains one of the following **Authorisation1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		137
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		137

5.4.1.3.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the authorisation, in a coded form.

Datatype: "Authorisation1Code" on page 192

CodeName	Name	Definition
AUTH	PreAuthorisedFile	Indicates a file has been pre authorised or approved within the originating customer environment and no further approval is required.
FDET	FileLevelAuthorisationDetails	Indicates that a file requires additional file level approval, with the ability to view both the payment information block and supporting customer credit transaction detail.
FSUM	FileLevelAuthorisationSummary	Indicates that a file requires additional file level approval, with the ability to view only the payment information block level information.
ILEV	InstructionLevelAuthorisation	Indicates that a file requires all customer transactions to be authorised or approved.

5.4.1.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the authorisation, in a free text form.

Datatype: "Max128Text" on page 200

5.4.1.4 InitiatingParty <InitgPty>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party that initiates the mandate message.

InitiatingParty <InitgPty> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification43" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		181
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		181
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			181
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]			187
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

5.4.1.5 InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent that instructs the next party in the chain to carry out an instruction.

Usage Rule:

In case of amendment and cancellation request messages, the instructing agent is the party sending the amendment and cancellation request message and not the party that sent the original mandate initiation request message.

In case of acceptance report message, the instructing agent is the party sending the acceptance report message and not the party that sent the original mandate request message.

InstructingAgent <InstgAgt> contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5](#)" on page 172 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			172
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		173
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]			173
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]			174
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		174
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		174
	MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		174
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]			175
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		175
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			175
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		176
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		176
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		176
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		176

5.4.1.6 InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent that is instructed by the previous party in the chain to carry out an instruction.

Usage Rule:

In case of amendment and cancellation request messages, the instructed agent is the party receiving the amendment and cancellation request message and not the party that received the original mandate initiation request message.

In case of acceptance report message, the instructed agent is the party receiving the acceptance report message and not the party that received the original mandate request message.

InstructedAgent <InstdAgt> contains the following elements (see "[BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5](#)" on page 172 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			172
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		173
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]			173
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]			174
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		174
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		174
	MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		174
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]			175
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		175
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			175
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		176
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		176
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		176
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		176

5.4.2 UnderlyingAcceptanceDetails <UndrlygAccptncDtls>

Presence: [1..*]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide information on the acceptance or rejection of the mandate request.

UnderlyingAcceptanceDetails <UndrlygAcptncDtls> contains the following **MandateAcceptance3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	OriginalMessageInformation <OrgnlMsgInf>	[0..1]	±		142
	AcceptanceResult <AcptncRslt>	[1..1]			142
	Accepted <Acptd>	[1..1]	Indicator		143
	RejectReason <RjctRsn>	[0..1]			143
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		143
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		143
	AdditionalRejectReasonInformation <AddtlRjctRsnInf>	[0..*]	Text		143
	OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]			144
{Or	OriginalMandateIdentification <OrgnlMndtId>	[1..1]	Text		146
Or}	OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]		C9, C10	146
	MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[1..1]	Text		148
	MandateRequestIdentification <MndtReqId>	[0..1]	Text		148
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			148
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			148
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		149
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		149
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			149
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		149
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		149
	Occurrences <Ocrncs>	[0..1]			149
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		150
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		150
	Duration <Drtn>	[0..1]	±		151
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		151
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		151
	CollectionAmount <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	151
	MaximumAmount <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	151
	CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmId>	[0..1]	±		152
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		154
	CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		156

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		156
	UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		157
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		159
	DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		161
	DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		161
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		162
	ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>	[0..1]			164
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			164
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			164
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		165
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		166
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		166
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		166
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		166
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C8	166

5.4.2.1 OriginalMessageInformation <OrgnlMsgInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides information on the original message.

OriginalMessageInformation <OrgnlMsgInf> contains the following elements (see "[OriginalMessageInformation1](#)" on page 177 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		178
	MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		178
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		178

5.4.2.2 AcceptanceResult <AcptncRslt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Provides detailed information on the acceptance result.

AcceptanceResult <AccptncRslt> contains the following **AcceptanceResult6** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Accepted <Accptd>	[1..1]	Indicator		143
	RejectReason <RjctRsn>	[0..1]			143
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		143
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		143
	AdditionalRejectReasonInformation <AddtlRjctRsnInf>	[0..*]	Text		143

5.4.2.2.1 Accepted <Accptd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Indicates whether the mandate request was accepted or rejected.

Datatype: One of the following values must be used (see ["YesNoIndicator"](#) on page 199):

- *Meaning When True:* Yes
- *Meaning When False:* No

5.4.2.2.2 RejectReason <RjctRsn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the reason for the rejection of a mandate request.

RejectReason <RjctRsn> contains one of the following **MandateReason1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		143
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		143

5.4.2.2.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason, as published in an external reason code list.

Datatype: ["ExternalMandateReason1Code"](#) on page 195

5.4.2.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: ["Max35Text"](#) on page 201

5.4.2.2.3 AdditionalRejectReasonInformation <AddtlRjctRsnInf>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Further details on the reject reason.

Datatype: ["Max105Text"](#) on page 199

5.4.2.3 OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Provides the original mandate data.

OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt> contains one of the following **OriginalMandate2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	OriginalMandateIdentification <OrgnlMndtId>	[1..1]	Text		146
Or}	OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]		C9, C10	146
	MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[1..1]	Text		148
	MandateRequestIdentification <MndtReqId>	[0..1]	Text		148
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			148
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			148
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		149
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		149
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			149
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		149
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		149
	Occurrences <Ocrncs>	[0..1]			149
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		150
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		150
	Duration <Drtn>	[0..1]	±		151
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		151
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		151
	CollectionAmount <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	151
	MaximumAmount <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	151
	CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmId>	[0..1]	±		152
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		154
	CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		156
	CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		156
	UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		157
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		159
	DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		161
	DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		161
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		162
	ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>	[0..1]			164
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			164
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			164

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		165
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		166
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		166
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		166
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		166

5.4.2.3.1 OriginalMandateIdentification <OrgnlMndtId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously identify the original mandate.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

5.4.2.3.2 OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Provides the original mandate data.

Impacted by: C9 "UltimateCreditorGuideline", C10 "UltimateDebtorGuideline"

OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt> contains the following **Mandate1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[1..1]	Text		148
	MandateRequestIdentification <MndtReqId>	[0..1]	Text		148
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			148
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			148
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		149
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		149
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			149
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		149
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		149
	Occurrences <Ocrncs>	[0..1]			149
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		150
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		150
	Duration <Drtn>	[0..1]	±		151
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		151
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		151
	CollectionAmount <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	151
	MaximumAmount <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C5	151
	CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		152
	Creditor <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		154
	CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		156
	CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		156
	UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		157
	Debtor <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		159
	DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±		161
	DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		161
	UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		162
	ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>	[0..1]			164
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			164
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			164
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		165
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		166

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		166
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		166
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		166

Constraints

- **UltimateCreditorGuideline**

UltimateCreditor may only be present if different from Creditor.

- **UltimateDebtorGuideline**

UltimateDebtor may only be present if different from Debtor.

5.4.2.3.2.1 MandateIdentification <MndtId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously identify the mandate.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

5.4.2.3.2.2 MandateRequestIdentification <MndtReqlId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification for the mandate request, as assigned by the initiating party.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

5.4.2.3.2.3 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of mandate, such as paper, electronic or scheme.

Type <Tp> contains the following **MandateTypeInformation1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			148
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		149
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		149
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			149
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		149
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		149

5.4.2.3.2.3.1 ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agreement under which or rules under which the mandate resides.

ServiceLevel <SvcLvl> contains one of the following **ServiceLevel8Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		149
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		149

5.4.2.3.2.3.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the parties, as published in an external service level code list.

Datatype: "ExternalServiceLevel1Code" on page 196

5.4.2.3.2.3.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the parties, as a proprietary code.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

5.4.2.3.2.3.2 LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: User community specific instrument.

Usage: This element is used to specify a local instrument, local clearing option and/or further qualify the service or service level.

LocalInstrument <LclInstrm> contains one of the following **LocalInstrument2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		149
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		149

5.4.2.3.2.3.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the local instrument, as published in an external local instrument code list.

Datatype: "ExternalLocalInstrument1Code" on page 195

5.4.2.3.2.3.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the local instrument, as a proprietary code.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

5.4.2.3.2.4 Occurrences <Ocrncs>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides details of the duration of the mandate and occurrence of the underlying transactions.

Occurrences <Ocrncs> contains the following **MandateOccurrences2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		150
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		150
	Duration <Drtn>	[0..1]	±		151
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		151
	FinalCollectionDate <FnIColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		151

5.4.2.3.2.4.1 SequenceType <SeqTp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identifies the underlying transaction sequence as either recurring or one-off.

Datatype: "SequenceType2Code" on page 197

CodeName	Name	Definition
RCUR	Recurring	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used for regular direct debit transactions initiated by the creditor.
OOFF	OneOff	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used to initiate one single direct debit transaction.

5.4.2.3.2.4.2 Frequency <Frqcy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Regularity with which instructions are to be created and processed.

Datatype: "Frequency6Code" on page 196

CodeName	Name	Definition
YEAR	Annual	Event takes place every year or once a year.
MNTH	Monthly	Event takes place every month or once a month.
QURT	Quarterly	Event takes place every three months or four times a year.
MIAN	SemiAnnual	Event takes place every six months or two times a year.
WEEK	Weekly	Event takes place once a week.
DAIL	Daily	Event takes place every day.
ADHO	Adhoc	Event takes place on request or as necessary.
INDA	IntraDay	Event takes place several times a day.
FRTN	Fortnightly	Event takes place every two weeks.

5.4.2.3.2.4.3 Duration <Drtn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Length of time for which the mandate remains valid.

Duration <Drtn> contains the following elements (see "DatePeriodDetails1" on page 171 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		171
	ToDate <ToDt>	[0..1]	Date		171

5.4.2.3.2.4.4 FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date of the first collection of a direct debit as per the mandate.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 197

5.4.2.3.2.4.5 FinalCollectionDate <FnIColltnDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date of the final collection of a direct debit as per the mandate.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 197

5.4.2.3.2.5 CollectionAmount <ColltnAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Fixed amount to be collected from the debtor's account.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C5 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 191

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

5.4.2.3.2.6 MaximumAmount <MaxAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Maximum amount that may be collected from the debtor's account, per instruction.

Impacted by: C1 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C5 "CurrencyAmount"

Datatype: "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 191

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

5.4.2.3.2.7 CreditorSchemeldentification <CdtrSchmeld>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Credit party that signs the mandate.

CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmId> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification43" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		181
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		181
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			181
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]			187
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

5.4.2.3.2.8 Creditor <Cdtr>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Party that signs the mandate and to whom an amount of money is due.

Creditor <Cdtr> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification43" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		181
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		181
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			181
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]			187
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

5.4.2.3.2.9 CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the creditor to which a credit entry will be posted as a result of the payment transaction.

CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct> contains the following elements (see "CashAccount24" on page 168 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		168
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		168
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		169
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		169

5.4.2.3.2.10 CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Financial institution servicing an account for the creditor.

CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt> contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5" on page 172 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			172
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		173
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]			173
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]			174
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		174
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		174
	MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		174
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]			175
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		175
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			175
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		176
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		176
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		176
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		176

5.4.2.3.2.11 UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Ultimate party to which an amount of money is due.

UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification43" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		181
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		181
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			181
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]			187
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

5.4.2.3.2.12 Debtor <Dbtr>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Party that signs the mandate and owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

Debtor <Dbtr> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification43" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		181
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		181
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			181
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]			187
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

5.4.2.3.2.13 DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the debtor, to which a debit entry will be made as a result of the transaction.

DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct> contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount24](#)" on page 168 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		168
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		168
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		169
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		169

5.4.2.3.2.14 DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Financial institution servicing an account for the debtor.

DebtorAgent <DbtrAg> contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5" on page 172 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			172
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		173
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]			173
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]			174
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		174
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		174
	MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		174
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]			175
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		175
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			175
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		176
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		176
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		176
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		176

5.4.2.3.2.15 UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr> contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification43" on page 179 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		181
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		181
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			181
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]			187
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

5.4.2.3.2.16 ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides information to identify the underlying documents associated with the mandate.

ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc> contains the following **ReferredDocumentInformation3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			164
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			164
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		165
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		166
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		166
	Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		166
	RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		166

5.4.2.3.2.16.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of referred document.

Type <Tp> contains the following **ReferredDocumentType2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			164
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		165
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		166
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		166

5.4.2.3.2.16.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Provides the type details of the referred document.

CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry> contains one of the following **ReferredDocumentType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		165
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		166

5.4.2.3.2.16.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Document type in a coded form.

Datatype: "DocumentType5Code" on page 193

CodeName	Name	Definition
MSIN	MeteredServiceInvoice	Document is an invoice claiming payment for the supply of metered services, for example gas or electricity supplied to a fixed meter.
CNFA	CreditNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a credit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
DNFA	DebitNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a debit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
CINV	CommercialInvoice	Document is an invoice.
CREN	CreditNote	Document is a credit note.
DEBN	DebitNote	Document is a debit note.
HIRI	HireInvoice	Document is an invoice for the hiring of human resources or renting goods or equipment.
SBIN	SelfBilledInvoice	Document is an invoice issued by the debtor.
CMCN	CommercialContract	Document is an agreement between the parties, stipulating the terms and conditions of the delivery of goods or services.
SOAC	StatementOfAccount	Document is a statement of the transactions posted to the debtor's account at the supplier.
DISP	DispatchAdvice	Document is a dispatch advice.
BOLD	BillOfLading	Document is a shipping notice.
VCHR	Voucher	Document is an electronic payment document.
AROI	AccountReceivableOpenItem	Document is a payment that applies to a specific source document.
TSUT	TradeServicesUtilityTransaction	Document is a transaction identifier as assigned by the Trade Services Utility.

5.4.2.3.2.16.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Proprietary identification of the type of the remittance document.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 201**5.4.2.3.2.16.1.2 Issuer <Issr>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Identification of the issuer of the reference document type.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 201**5.4.2.3.2.16.2 Number <Nb>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the referred document.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 201**5.4.2.3.2.16.3 RelatedDate <RltdDt>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Date associated with the referred document.*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 197**5.4.2.4 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>***Presence:* [0..*]*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.*Impacted by:* C8 "SupplementaryDataRule"**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 178 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		178
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]			179
	Contents <Cnts>	[1..1]	(User Defined)		179

Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

5.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>*Presence:* [0..*]

Definition: Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

Impacted by: C8 "SupplementaryDataRule"

SupplementaryData <SplmtryData> contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 178 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		178
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]			179
	Contents <Cnts>	[1..1]	(User Defined)		179

Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

6 Message Items Types

6.1 MessageComponents

6.1.1 Account

6.1.1.1 CashAccount24

Definition: Provides the details to identify an account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	±		168
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		168
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		169
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		169

6.1.1.1.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification for the account between the account owner and the account servicer.

Identification <Id> contains one of the following elements (see "AccountIdentification4Choice" on page 170 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	IBAN <IBAN>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet		170
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]			170
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		170
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			171
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		171
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		171
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		171

6.1.1.1.2 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the nature, or use of the account.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following elements (see "[CashAccountType2Choice](#)" on page 169 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		169
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		169

6.1.1.1.3 Currency <Ccy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the currency in which the account is held.

Usage: Currency should only be used in case one and the same account number covers several currencies

and the initiating party needs to identify which currency needs to be used for settlement on the account.

Datatype: "[ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode](#)" on page 192

6.1.1.1.4 Name <Nm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the account, as assigned by the account servicing institution, in agreement with the account owner in order to provide an additional means of identification of the account.

Usage: The account name is different from the account owner name. The account name is used in certain user communities to provide a means of identifying the account, in addition to the account owner's identity and the account number.

Datatype: "[Max70Text](#)" on page 201

6.1.1.2 CashAccountType2Choice

Definition: Nature or use of the account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		169
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		169

6.1.1.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Account type, in a coded form.

Datatype: "[ExternalCashAccountType1Code](#)" on page 194

6.1.1.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Nature or use of the account in a proprietary form.

Datatype: "[Max35Text](#)" on page 201

6.1.2 Account identification

6.1.2.1 AccountIdentification4Choice

Definition: Specifies the unique identification of an account as assigned by the account servicer.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	IBAN <IBAN>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet		170
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]			170
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		170
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			171
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		171
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		171
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		171

6.1.2.1.1 IBAN <IBAN>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: International Bank Account Number (IBAN) - identifier used internationally by financial institutions to uniquely identify the account of a customer. Further specifications of the format and content of the IBAN can be found in the standard ISO 13616 "Banking and related financial services - International Bank Account Number (IBAN)" version 1997-10-01, or later revisions.

Datatype: "IBAN2007Identifier" on page 199

6.1.2.1.2 Other <Othr>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique identification of an account, as assigned by the account servicer, using an identification scheme.

Other <Othr> contains the following **GenericAccountIdentification1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		170
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			171
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		171
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		171
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		171

6.1.2.1.2.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification assigned by an institution.

Datatype: "Max34Text" on page 200

6.1.2.1.2.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme

SchemeName <SchmeNm> contains one of the following **AccountSchemeName1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		171
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		171

6.1.2.1.2.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

Datatype: ["ExternalAccountIdentification1Code" on page 194](#)

6.1.2.1.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

Datatype: ["Max35Text" on page 201](#)

6.1.2.1.2.3 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Entity that assigns the identification.

Datatype: ["Max35Text" on page 201](#)

6.1.3 Date period

6.1.3.1 DatePeriodDetails1

Definition: Range of time defined by a start date and an end date.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		171
	ToDate <ToDt>	[0..1]	Date		171

6.1.3.1.1 FromDate <FrDt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Start date of the range.

Datatype: ["ISODate" on page 197](#)

6.1.3.1.2 ToDate <ToDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: End date of the range.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 197

6.1.4 Financial institution identification

6.1.4.1 BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification5

Definition: Set of elements used to uniquely and unambiguously identify a financial institution or a branch of a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			172
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		173
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]			173
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]			174
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		174
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		174
	MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		174
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]			175
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		175
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			175
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		176
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		176
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		176
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]	±		176

6.1.4.1.1 FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a financial institution, as assigned under an internationally recognised or proprietary identification scheme.

FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId> contains the following **FinancialInstitutionIdentification8** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		173
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]			173
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]			174
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		174
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		174
	MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		174
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		174
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		174
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]			175
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		175
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			175
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		176
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		176
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		176

6.1.4.1.1.1 BICFI <BICFI>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Code allocated to a financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority as described in ISO 9362 "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

Datatype: "BICFIIdentifier" on page 198

6.1.4.1.1.2 ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Information used to identify a member within a clearing system.

ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld> contains the following **ClearingSystemMemberIdentification2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]			174
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		174
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		174
	MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		174

6.1.4.1.1.2.1 ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Specification of a pre-agreed offering between clearing agents or the channel through which the payment instruction is processed.**ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>** contains one of the following **ClearingSystemIdentification2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		174
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		174

6.1.4.1.1.2.1.1 Code <Cd>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Identification of a clearing system, in a coded form as published in an external list.*Datatype:* "ExternalClearingSystemIdentification1Code" on page 195**6.1.4.1.1.2.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Identification code for a clearing system, that has not yet been identified in the list of clearing systems.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 201**6.1.4.1.1.2.2 MemberIdentification <Mmbld>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Identification of a member of a clearing system.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 201**6.1.4.1.1.3 Name <Nm>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Name by which an agent is known and which is usually used to identify that agent.*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 200**6.1.4.1.1.4 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

PostalAddress <PstIAdr> contains the following elements (see "PostalAddress6" on page 188 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		188
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		189
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		189
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		189
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		189
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		189
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		189
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		190
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet		190
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		190

6.1.4.1.1.5 Other <Othr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification of an agent, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

Other <Othr> contains the following **GenericFinancialIdentification1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		175
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			175
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		176
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		176
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		176

6.1.4.1.1.5.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a person.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

6.1.4.1.1.5.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme.

SchemaName <SchmeNm> contains one of the following **FinancialIdentificationScheme-Name1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		176
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		176

6.1.4.1.1.5.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

Datatype: "ExternalFinancialInstitutionIdentification1Code" on page 195

6.1.4.1.1.5.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

6.1.4.1.1.5.3 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Entity that assigns the identification.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

6.1.4.1.2 BranchIdentification <BrnchId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies a specific branch of a financial institution.

Usage: This component should be used in case the identification information in the financial institution component does not provide identification up to branch level.

BranchIdentification <BrnchId> contains the following elements (see "BranchData2" on page 176 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		177
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		177
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		177

6.1.4.2 BranchData2

Definition: Information that locates and identifies a specific branch of a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		177
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		177
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		177

6.1.4.2.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a branch of a financial institution.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

6.1.4.2.2 Name <Nm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name by which an agent is known and which is usually used to identify that agent.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 200

6.1.4.2.3 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

PostalAddress <PstlAdr> contains the following elements (see "PostalAddress6" on page 188 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		188
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		189
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		189
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		189
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		189
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		189
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		189
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		190
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet		190
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		190

6.1.5 Miscellaneous

6.1.5.1 OriginalMessageInformation1

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the original instructing party, to unambiguously identify the message.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		178
	MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		178
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		178

6.1.5.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Point to point reference, as assigned by the original initiating party, to unambiguously identify the original mandate request message.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

6.1.5.1.2 MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the message name identifier to which the message refers.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

6.1.5.1.3 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and time at which the message was created.

Datatype: "ISODateTime" on page 198

6.1.5.2 SupplementaryData1

Definition: Additional information that can not be captured in the structured fields and/or any other specific block.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		178
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]			179
	Contents <Cnts>	[1..1]	(User Defined)		179

Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

6.1.5.2.1 PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous reference to the location where the supplementary data must be inserted in the message instance.

In the case of XML, this is expressed by a valid XPath.

Datatype: "Max350Text" on page 201

6.1.5.2.2 Envelope <Envlp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Technical element wrapping the supplementary data.

Envelope <Envlp> contains the following **SupplementaryDataEnvelope1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Contents <Cnts>	[1..1]	(User Defined)		179

6.1.5.2.2.1 Contents <Cnts>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Technical element that specifies the supplementary data.

Type: (User Defined)

Technical supplementary data structure that allows to specify any valid XML Structure (e.g. through an XML Schema). The property namespace is set to 'any'.

The content of the supplementary data MUST NOT be validated by the receiver (processContent=lax).

6.1.6 Organisation identification

6.1.6.1 PartyIdentification43

Definition: Set of elements used to identify a person or an organisation.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		181
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		181
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			181
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		186
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		186
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]			187
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

6.1.6.1.1 Name <Nm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name by which a party is known and which is usually used to identify that party.

Datatype: "Max140Text" on page 200

6.1.6.1.2 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

PostalAddress <PstlAdr> contains the following elements (see "PostalAddress6" on page 188 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		188
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		189
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		189
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		189
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		189
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		189
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		189
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		190
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet		190
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		190

6.1.6.1.3 Identification <Id>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a party.

Identification <Id> contains one of the following **Party11Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			182
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			184
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186

6.1.6.1.3.1 OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous way to identify an organisation.

OrganisationIdentification <OrgId> contains the following **OrganisationIdentification8** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		183
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			183
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184

6.1.6.1.3.1.1 AnyBIC <AnyBIC>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Code allocated to a financial institution or non financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority as described in ISO 9362 "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

Datatype: "AnyBICIdentifier" on page 198

6.1.6.1.3.1.2 Other <Othr>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Unique identification of an organisation, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

Other <Othr> contains the following **GenericOrganisationIdentification1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		183
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			183
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		184

6.1.6.1.3.1.2.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification assigned by an institution.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

6.1.6.1.3.1.2.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme.

SchemeName <SchmeNm> contains one of the following **OrganisationIdentificationScheme-Name1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		184
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		184

6.1.6.1.3.1.2.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

Datatype: "ExternalOrganisationIdentification1Code" on page 196

6.1.6.1.3.1.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

6.1.6.1.3.1.2.3 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Entity that assigns the identification.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

6.1.6.1.3.2 PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a person, eg, passport.

PrivateIdentification <PrvtId> contains the following **PersonIdentification5** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			185
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			185
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer </Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186

6.1.6.1.3.2.1 DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and place of birth of a person.

DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth> contains the following **DateAndPlaceOfBirth** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		185
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		185
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		185
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		185

6.1.6.1.3.2.1.1 BirthDate <BirthDt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Date on which a person is born.

Datatype: "ISODate" on page 197

6.1.6.1.3.2.1.2 ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Province where a person was born.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

6.1.6.1.3.2.1.3 CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: City where a person was born.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

6.1.6.1.3.2.1.4 CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Country where a person was born.

Datatype: "CountryCode" on page 193

6.1.6.1.3.2.2 Other <Othr>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Unique identification of a person, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

Other <Othr> contains the following **GenericPersonIdentification1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		186
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			186
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		186

6.1.6.1.3.2.2.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a person.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

6.1.6.1.3.2.2.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme.

SchemeName <SchmeNm> contains one of the following **PersonIdentificationScheme-Name1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		186
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		186

6.1.6.1.3.2.2.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

Datatype: "ExternalPersonIdentification1Code" on page 196

6.1.6.1.3.2.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

6.1.6.1.3.2.2.3 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Entity that assigns the identification.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

6.1.6.1.4 CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Country in which a person resides (the place of a person's home). In the case of a company, it is the country from which the affairs of that company are directed.

Datatype: ["CountryCode" on page 193](#)

6.1.6.1.5 ContactDetails <CtctDtls>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to indicate how to contact the party.

ContactDetails <CtctDtls> contains the following **ContactDetails2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		187
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		187
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		187
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		188
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		188
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	Text		188

6.1.6.1.5.1 NamePrefix <NmPrfx>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the terms used to formally address a person.

Datatype: ["NamePrefix1Code" on page 197](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
DOCT	Doctor	Title of the person is Doctor or Dr.
MIST	Mister	Title of the person is Mister or Mr.
MISS	Miss	Title of the person is Miss.
MADM	Madam	Title of the person is Madam.

6.1.6.1.5.2 Name <Nm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name by which a party is known and which is usually used to identify that party.

Datatype: ["Max140Text" on page 200](#)

6.1.6.1.5.3 PhoneNumber <PhneNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Collection of information that identifies a phone number, as defined by telecom services.

Datatype: ["PhoneNumber" on page 201](#)

6.1.6.1.5.4 MobileNumber <MobNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Collection of information that identifies a mobile phone number, as defined by telecom services.

Datatype: "PhoneNumber" on page 201

6.1.6.1.5.5 FaxNumber <FaxNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Collection of information that identifies a FAX number, as defined by telecom services.

Datatype: "PhoneNumber" on page 201

6.1.6.1.5.6 EmailAddress <EmailAdr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Address for electronic mail (e-mail).

Datatype: "Max2048Text" on page 200

6.1.6.1.5.7 Other <Othr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Contact details in an other form.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

6.1.7 Postal address

6.1.7.1 PostalAddress6

Definition: Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		188
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		189
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		189
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		189
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		189
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		189
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		189
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		190
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet		190
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		190

6.1.7.1.1 AddressType <AdrTp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies the nature of the postal address.

Datatype: "AddressType2Code" on page 192

CodeName	Name	Definition
ADDR	Postal	Address is the complete postal address.
PBOX	POBox	Address is a postal office (PO) box.
HOME	Residential	Address is the home address.
BIZZ	Business	Address is the business address.
MLTO	MailTo	Address is the address to which mail is sent.
DLVY	DeliveryTo	Address is the address to which delivery is to take place.

6.1.7.1.2 Department <Dept>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of a division of a large organisation or building.

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 201

6.1.7.1.3 SubDepartment <SubDept>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of a sub-division of a large organisation or building.

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 201

6.1.7.1.4 StreetName <StrtNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of a street or thoroughfare.

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 201

6.1.7.1.5 BuildingNumber <BldgNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Number that identifies the position of a building on a street.

Datatype: "Max16Text" on page 200

6.1.7.1.6 PostCode <PstCd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifier consisting of a group of letters and/or numbers that is added to a postal address to assist the sorting of mail.

Datatype: "Max16Text" on page 200

6.1.7.1.7 TownName <TwnNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of a built-up area, with defined boundaries, and a local government.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

6.1.7.1.8 CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies a subdivision of a country such as state, region, county.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 201

6.1.7.1.9 Country <Ctry>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Nation with its own government.

Datatype: "CountryCode" on page 193

6.1.7.1.10 AddressLine <AdrLine>

Presence: [0..7]

Definition: Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services, presented in free format text.

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 201

6.2 Message Datatypes

6.2.1 Amount

6.2.1.1 ActiveCurrencyAndAmount

Definition: A number of monetary units specified in an active currency where the unit of currency is explicit and compliant with ISO 4217.

Type: Amount

This data type contains the following XML attribute:

Name	Attribute XML Name	Datatype
Currency	Ccy	"ActiveCurrencyCode" on page 191

Format

minInclusive	0
totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	5

Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217

Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.2.1.2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount

Definition: A number of monetary units specified in an active or a historic currency where the unit of currency is explicit and compliant with ISO 4217.

Type: Amount

This data type contains the following XML attribute:

Name	Attribute XML Name	Datatype
Currency	Ccy	"ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 192

Format

minInclusive	0
totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	5

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

6.2.2 CodeSet

6.2.2.1 ActiveCurrencyCode

Definition: A code allocated to a currency by a Maintenance Agency under an international identification scheme as described in the latest edition of the international standard ISO 4217 "Codes for the representation of currencies and funds".

Type: CodeSet

Format

pattern	[A-Z]{3,3}
---------	------------

Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

6.2.2.2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode

Definition: A code allocated to a currency by a Maintenance Agency under an international identification scheme, as described in the latest edition of the international standard ISO 4217 "Codes for the representation of currencies and funds".

Type: CodeSet

Format

pattern [A-Z]{3,3}

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

6.2.2.3 AddressType2Code

Definition: Specifies the type of address.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
ADDR	Postal	Address is the complete postal address.
PBOX	POBox	Address is a postal office (PO) box.
HOME	Residential	Address is the home address.
BIZZ	Business	Address is the business address.
MLTO	MailTo	Address is the address to which mail is sent.
DLVY	DeliveryTo	Address is the address to which delivery is to take place.

6.2.2.4 Authorisation1Code

Definition: Specifies the level of approval depending on a number of factors, including payment type, threshold amount or local country or operations practice.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
AUTH	PreAuthorisedFile	Indicates a file has been pre authorised or approved within the originating cus-

CodeName	Name	Definition
		former environment and no further approval is required.
FDET	FileLevelAuthorisationDetails	Indicates that a file requires additional file level approval, with the ability to view both the payment information block and supporting customer credit transaction detail.
FSUM	FileLevelAuthorisationSummary	Indicates that a file requires additional file level approval, with the ability to view only the payment information block level information.
ILEV	InstructionLevelAuthorisation	Indicates that a file requires all customer transactions to be authorised or approved.

6.2.2.5 CountryCode

Definition: Code to identify a country, a dependency, or another area of particular geopolitical interest, on the basis of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

Type: CodeSet

Format

pattern [A-Z]{2,2}

Constraints

- **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

6.2.2.6 DocumentType5Code

Definition: Specifies a type of financial or commercial document.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MSIN	MeteredServiceInvoice	Document is an invoice claiming payment for the supply of metered services, for example gas or electricity supplied to a fixed meter.
CNFA	CreditNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a credit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
DNFA	DebitNoteRelatedToFinancialAdjustment	Document is a debit note for the final amount settled for a commercial transaction.
CINV	CommercialInvoice	Document is an invoice.
CREN	CreditNote	Document is a credit note.
DEBN	DebitNote	Document is a debit note.

CodeName	Name	Definition
HIRI	HireInvoice	Document is an invoice for the hiring of human resources or renting goods or equipment.
SBIN	SelfBilledInvoice	Document is an invoice issued by the debtor.
CMCN	CommercialContract	Document is an agreement between the parties, stipulating the terms and conditions of the delivery of goods or services.
SOAC	StatementOfAccount	Document is a statement of the transactions posted to the debtor's account at the supplier.
DISP	DispatchAdvice	Document is a dispatch advice.
BOLD	BillOfLading	Document is a shipping notice.
VCHR	Voucher	Document is an electronic payment document.
AROJ	AccountReceivableOpenItem	Document is a payment that applies to a specific source document.
TSUT	TradeServicesUtilityTransaction	Document is a transaction identifier as assigned by the Trade Services Utility.

6.2.2.7 ExternalAccountIdentification1Code

Definition: Specifies the external account identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

6.2.2.8 ExternalCashAccountType1Code

Definition: Specifies the nature, or use, of the cash account in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

6.2.2.9 ExternalClearingSystemIdentification1Code

Definition: Specifies the clearing system identification code, as published in an external clearing system identification code list.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	5

6.2.2.10 ExternalFinancialInstitutionIdentification1Code

Definition: Specifies the external financial institution identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

6.2.2.11 ExternalLocalInstrument1Code

Definition: Specifies the external local instrument code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 35 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	35

6.2.2.12 ExternalMandateReason1Code

Definition: Specifies the external mandate processing reason code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

6.2.2.13 ExternalOrganisationIdentification1Code

Definition: Specifies the external organisation identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

6.2.2.14 ExternalPersonIdentification1Code

Definition: Specifies the external person identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

6.2.2.15 ExternalServiceLevel1Code

Definition: Specifies the external service level code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

6.2.2.16 Frequency6Code

Definition: Specifies the regularity of an event.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
YEAR	Annual	Event takes place every year or once a year.
MNTH	Monthly	Event takes place every month or once a month.
QURT	Quarterly	Event takes place every three months or four times a year.

CodeName	Name	Definition
MIAN	SemiAnnual	Event takes place every six months or two times a year.
WEEK	Weekly	Event takes place once a week.
DAIL	Daily	Event takes place every day.
ADHO	Adhoc	Event takes place on request or as necessary.
INDA	IntraDay	Event takes place several times a day.
FRTN	Fortnightly	Event takes place every two weeks.

6.2.2.17 NamePrefix1Code

Definition: Specifies the terms used to formally address a person.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
DOCT	Doctor	Title of the person is Doctor or Dr.
MIST	Mister	Title of the person is Mister or Mr.
MISS	Miss	Title of the person is Miss.
MADM	Madam	Title of the person is Madam.

6.2.2.18 SequenceType2Code

Definition: Specifies whether a once off transaction is covered or whether recurring transactions are covered.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
RCUR	Recurring	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used for regular direct debit transactions initiated by the creditor.
OOFF	OneOff	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used to initiate one single direct debit transaction.

6.2.3 Date

6.2.3.1 ISODate

Definition: A particular point in the progression of time in a calendar year expressed in the YYYY-MM-DD format. This representation is defined in "XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition - W3C Recommendation 28 October 2004" which is aligned with ISO 8601.

Type: Date

6.2.4 DateTime

6.2.4.1 ISODateTime

Definition: A particular point in the progression of time defined by a mandatory date and a mandatory time component, expressed in either UTC time format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sssZ), local time with UTC offset format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sss+/-hh:mm), or local time format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sss). These representations are defined in "XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition - W3C Recommendation 28 October 2004" which is aligned with ISO 8601.

Note on the time format:

1) beginning / end of calendar day

00:00:00 = the beginning of a calendar day

24:00:00 = the end of a calendar day

2) fractions of second in time format

Decimal fractions of seconds may be included. In this case, the involved parties shall agree on the maximum number of digits that are allowed.

Type: DateTime

6.2.5 IdentifierSet

6.2.5.1 AnyBICIdentifier

Definition: Code allocated to a financial or non-financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority, as described in ISO 9362 "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

Type: IdentifierSet

Identification scheme: SWIFT; AnyBICIdentifier

Format

pattern [A-Z]{6,6}[A-Z2-9][A-NP-Z0-9]([A-Z0-9]{3,3}){0,1}

Constraints

- AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the BIC directory, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters comprising the first three or all four of the following components: INSTITUTION CODE, COUNTRY CODE, LOCATION CODE, BRANCH CODE. The institution code, country code and location code are mandatory, while the branch code is optional.

6.2.5.2 BICFIIdentifier

Definition: Code allocated to a financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority as described in ISO 9362 "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

Type: IdentifierSet

Identification scheme: SWIFT; BICIdentifier

Format

pattern [A-Z]{6,6}[A-Z2-9][A-NP-Z0-9]([A-Z0-9]{3,3}){0,1}

Constraints

- **BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the BIC directory, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters comprising the first three or all four of the following components: INSTITUTION CODE, COUNTRY CODE, LOCATION CODE, BRANCH CODE. The institution code, country code and location code are mandatory, while the branch code is optional.

6.2.5.3 IBAN2007Identifier

Definition: An identifier used internationally by financial institutions to uniquely identify the account of a customer at a financial institution, as described in the latest edition of the international standard ISO 13616:2007 - "Banking and related financial services - International Bank Account Number (IBAN)".

Type: IdentifierSet

Identification scheme: National Banking Association; International Bank Account Number (ISO 13616)

Format

pattern [A-Z]{2,2}[0-9]{2,2}[a-zA-Z0-9]{1,30}

Constraints

- **IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

6.2.6 Indicator

6.2.6.1 YesNoIndicator

Definition: Indicates a "Yes" or "No" type of answer for an element.

Type: Indicator

Meaning When True: Yes

Meaning When False: No

6.2.7 Text

6.2.7.1 Max105Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 105 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	105

6.2.7.2 Max128Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 128 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	128

6.2.7.3 Max140Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 140 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	140

6.2.7.4 Max16Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 16 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	16

6.2.7.5 Max2048Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 2048 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	2048

6.2.7.6 Max34Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 34 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	34

6.2.7.7 Max350Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 350 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	350

6.2.7.8 Max35Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 35 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	35

6.2.7.9 Max70Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 70characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	70

6.2.7.10 PhoneNumber

Definition: The collection of information which identifies a specific phone or FAX number as defined by telecom services.

It consists of a "+" followed by the country code (from 1 to 3 characters) then a "-" and finally, any combination of numbers, "(", ")", "+", and "-" (up to 30 characters).

Type: Text

Format

pattern	\+[0-9]{1,3}-[0-9()+-]{1,30}
---------	------------------------------